

Grammaire des Français
THE
S Y N T A X
OF THE
FRENCH TONGUE
REDUCED TO PRACTICE,
BY A SERIES OF
RULES, EXAMPLES, AND EXERCISES:
TO WHICH IS ADDED,
A SELECT COLLECTION
OF
CURIOUS EXTRACTS,
AND
HISTORICAL COMPOSITIONS,
PARTICULARLY ADAPTED,
BY REFERENCES,
TO THE
RULES OF THE SYNTAX.

BY CHARLES PRAVAL.

Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci. HORACE.

D U B L I N :

Printed for W. and H. WHITESTONE, No. 29,
Capel-Street. M.DCC.LXXIX.

3. Y. N. T. A. K.

OF THE
FRENCH TONGUE

REPRODUCED

BY THE

FRANCE EXAMINER

IN THE

FRANCE

A. B. L. O. C. T. I. O. N.

OF THE

FRANCE

OF THE

FRANCE

OF THE

FRANCE

OF THE

FRANCE

OF THE

FRANCE

OF THE

FRANCE

OF THE

FRANCE



TO THE
RIGHT HONOURABLE
THE
P R O V O S T
AND
F E L L O W S
OF
TRINITY COLLEGE,
D U B L I N.

GENTLEMEN,

I TAKE the liberty to inscribe this
Work to you, as an homage due to
the learned University over which you
preside; happy to have found such an
opportunity of giving you a public proof
of the personal respect with which I have
the honour to be,

GENTLEMEN,

Your most humble

and obedient servant,

CHARLES PRAVAL.

TO THE
RIGHT HONOURABLE
THE
PROVOST
AND
FELLOWS
OF
TRINITY COLLEGE
DUBLIN

GENTLEMEN

I TAKE the liberty to inscribe this
Work to you, as an homage due to
the learned University over which you
preside: happy to have found such an
opportunity of giving you a public proof
of the personal respect with which I have
the honour to be

GENTLEMEN

Your most humble

and obedient servant

P R E F A C E.

A Language is an assemblage of sounds, agreed upon by the inhabitants of certain districts, as a medium or means of communicating their ideas to each other.

To learn a foreign language, is to make oneself acquainted with the difference that exists between it, and the one that was impressed in our mind during our infancy.

That difference consists, first in words, secondly, in a proper combination of them.

A copious quantity of words may be acquired through a long practice, a good memory, and the help of dictionaries; but this combination commonly called Syntax, requires other means to render it familiar, and it is the duty of a professor to find out these means.

There is in the grammars that have hitherto been published, a copious part devoted to that use, but the rules are in general, so long and intricate, that they oftener deter the student,

than encourage his pursuit to attain the language in contemplation.

Those rules are, however, most absolutely necessary ; and no foreigner, nay, NO FRENCHMAN, can pretend to speak French with propriety, who has not made them his particular study, and who does not put them continually in practice.

The difficulty was, then, to find means to rouse the patience and engage the attention of the learner ; nothing could sooner produce these effects than to introduce after every rule, one or two examples that might make a strong impression upon the mind ; after which a proper exercise will furnish the student with an opportunity of carrying theory into practice.

Such is the plan of the book I now offer to the public ; every difficulty that I have found (upon an experience of five years) to render the study of the French language intricate, is fully explained ; the recentest decisions of the French academy are carefully and strictly adhered to ; and the exercises compiled upon such subjects as may be either useful in familiar conversation, or instructive in severer studies.

Notwith-

Notwithstanding I have in the course of this book adhered to the principles of the edition of my Rudiments, republished in 1779, yet particular care has been taken, to render the rules so general, as to be applicable to any grammar extant, which is a circumstance seldom the case with exercise books; they in general referring to particular authors, and frequently becoming useless without even particular editions of those authors.

A strict attention to this course of exercise, will certainly enable a learner to write French with propriety, as far as the numerous phrases peculiar to that language will allow; this branch was too extensive to come within the compass of this work: at a future day I intend to publish a copious Dictionary of Phrases, carefully selected from our best authors, which I flatter myself will be found extremely useful, nothing of that kind having yet appeared.

CONTENTS.

Notwithstanding I have in the course of this
book adhered to the principles of the edition of
my Rabbinical, republished in 1790, yet par-
ticulars have been taken, so far as the rules
of grammar are to be applicable to any grammar
extent, without a direct reference to the case
with exercise books, they in general relating to
particular authors, and frequently becoming
useful without even particular editions of those
authors.

In the first attempt at this course of exercise
will certainly enable a learner to write Hebrew
with propriety, as far as the grammatical points
pertaining to that language will allow, this
course was the intention to write within the
compass of the work, at a moderate time
to publish a complete dictionary of Hebrew
carefully selected from our best sources, which
I hope to publish with the next edition.

Nothing more than a few lines of Hebrew
writing will be given in the next edition, and
the whole of the Hebrew language will be
given in the next edition, and the whole of the
Hebrew language will be given in the next edition.

C O N T E N T S.

PREFACE,

v

C H A P. I.

Of the Formation of the plural Number,

i

C H A P. II.

Of the Formation of the feminine Gender in Adjectives,

3

C H A P. III.

Of the Position of Adjectives,

6

C H A P. IV.

Of the Declension of Nouns,

11

C H A P. V.

Of the Conjugation of Verbs,

14

C H A P. VI.

Of Reflective Verbs,

19

C H A P. VII.

Of Articles,

22

C H A P. VIII.

On personal Pronouns,

31

C H A P.

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. IX.

On the possessive Pronouns, 43

C H A P. X.

Of demonstrative Pronouns, 49

C H A P. XI.

Of relative Pronouns, 56

C H A P. XII.

Of Pronouns interrogative, 61

C H A P. XIII.

Of Pronouns indeterminate, 67

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Particles le, y, en, 76

C H A P. XV.

Of the Construction of French Negatives, 82

C H A P. XVI.

On the Degrees of Comparison, 92

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Particles de, à, pour before the infinitive, 97

A R T I C L E I.

Of the Preposition de, 99

A R T I C L E

C O N T E N T S.

A R T I C L E II.

Of the Preposition à, 108

A R T I C L E III.

*Of Verbs governing sometimes de and sometimes
à before the next infinitive,* 114

A R T I C L E IV.

Of the Preposition pour before the infinitive, 119

A R T I C L E V.

Of Verbs governing the Genitive Case, 120

A R T I C L E VI.

Of Verbs governing the Dative Case, 122

C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Use of Tenses, 126—Of the Difference
between the Imperfect and Preterperfect Tense,* 128

C H A P. XIX.

Of the Conjunctive Mood, 142

C H A P. XX.

Of Participles, 149

C H A P. XXI.

Of Supines, 153

C H A P. XXII.

Of Impersonal Verbs, 160

C H A P.

C O N T E N T S.

C H A P. XXIII. A

Remarks on Propositions, 174

C H A P. XXIV. A

On Conjunctions, 178

C H A P. XXV.

Of the Idiom, 193

C H A P. XXVI.

Of the Use of the Particle que, 200

P A R T II.

Recapitulatory Exercises, I

E R R A T A.

Page 30, first line, for *Proposition*, read *Preposition*.

— 142, line 6, for *she would*, read *we should*.

T H E

THE
SYNTAX
OF THE
FRENCH TONGUE,
REDUCED TO PRACTICE.

CHAP. I.

RULE I.

EXAMPLE.

EXERCISE.

The gardens.
The stockings.

B

The

The garters.
 The knives.
 The hats.
 The pens.
 The soldiers.
 The works.

The houses.
 The pen-knives.
 The friends.
 The ships.
 The trees.
 The arms.

R U L E II.

- 2 If adjectives be joined to substantives in the plural number, they must be made plural by the same rules as the substantives.

E X A M P L E S.

The beautiful gardens.

Les beaux jardins.

The sincere friends.

Les amis sinceres.

N. B. The adjectives marked by an asterisk must come after their substantives.

E X E R C I S E.

* The new works.
 * The inveterate rivals.
 * The attentive scholars.
 The rich merchants.
 The brave admirals.
 The small birds.
 * The skillful surgeons.
 * The four grapes.

* The obliging friends.
 * The kind fathers.
 * The convenient desks.
 * The large characters.
 * The intrepid officers.
 The large domains.
 * The white cabbages.
 * The numerous slaves.

CHAP. II.

Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender in Adjectives.

RULE I.

IF an adjective be joined to a substantive, the gender of the substantive must be first ascertained; if it be masculine, the adjective is written down as it is found in the dictionary; but if the substantive is feminine, the adjective must be made feminine by the rules that are laid down in the grammar.

EXAMPLES.

The handsome woman.

La belle femme, masc. *beau*.

A pretty girl.

Une jolie fille, masc. *joli*.

EXERCISE.

* A numerous army,
The amiable queen.
* The powerful republic.
* The curious history.
The noble family.
The bad action.
The extensive library.

* A brilliant court.
The young princels.
The wise legislature.
The true picture.
The small cage.
The base behaviour.
The proud woman.

RULE II.

If the substantive feminine to which the adjective is joined is plural, then the adjective after being made feminine first, must also be made plural: as it is a rule, that it must agree in number and gender with its substantive.

EXAM-

E X A M P L E S.

The grey mares.

Les jumens grises.

The black hens.

Les poules noires.

E X E R C I S E.

The small rooms.

* The friendly visits.

* The unnatural wars.

* The faithful wives.

The large strawberries.

The black currants.

The strong fortifications.

The young sisters.

* The agreeable societies.

* The bloody battles.

* The interesting news.

* The painful studies.

The wild apples.

The delicious peaches.

The high walls.

The curious inventions.

R U L E III.

- 5 When two or more substantives of different genders refer to an adjective, that adjective must be in the plural number, and of the masculine gender.

E X A M P L E.

The bread and meat were very bad.

Le pain et la viande étoient fort mauvais.

E X E R C I S E.

My brother and sister are * studious.

Your exercise and your lesson are difficult.

The chaise and chariot are elegant.

The city and the port are convenient for trade.

R U L E IV.

- 6 Two or more substantives being immediately followed by an adjective, require commonly that adjective

jective to agree in number and gender with the last.

EXAMPLE.

Have you a new coat and waistcoat?

Avez vous un habit et une veste neuve?

N. B. Adjectives implying union, as *joint*, *réuni*, &c. are excepted from this rule, and follow the precedent (5.)

EXERCISES.

I have * a very bad pen and pen-knife.

He has † the field and houses inclosed.

We had ‡ long prayers and sermon.

He has faithful servants and housekeeper.

RULE V.

An adjective is sometimes introduced in a sentence without a substantive, but in that case the words *man* or *men* are understood; therefore the adjective must be in the masculine gender, and may be either in the plural or singular number.

EXAMPLE.

The rich are esteemed, but the poor are despised.

Les riches sont estimés, mais les pauvres sont méprisés.

Or,

Le riche est estimé, mais le pauvre est méprisé.

Because the English sentence may run thus.

The rich man is esteemed, but the poor man is despised.

* J'ai.

† Il a.

‡ Nous eumes,

C H A P. III.

Of the Position of Adjectives.

- 8 **I**N the English language the adjective generally precedes the substantive, but this is not the case in French; some go before, and some after; others may be placed indifferently before or after.

R U L E I.

- 9 Adjectives which are placed after the substantive are the following.

1st. Adjectives expressing the names of nations: as,
He is a French officer.

Il est officier François.

2dly. Names of colour, as,

Have you a red gown?

Avez vous une robe rouge?

3dly. Adjectives expressing the form and figure: as,

He has a round tower.

Il a une tour ronde.

4thly. Adjectives expressing the qualities and disposition of the mind: as,

He is a wise man.

Il est un homme sage.

5thly. Adjectives expressing some physical or elementary quality: as,

Have you any sweet wine?

Avez vous du vin doux?

6thly.

6thly. Supines and participles of verbs used as adjectives, as :

He is a beloved prince.

C'est un prince bien aimé.

7thly. Adjectives ending in *ic, ique, f, esque, ile, ule, able, ible*, generally come after the substantive: as,

It is an incredible thing.

C'est une chose incroyable.

They have a peaceful king.

Ils ont un roi pacifique.

N. B. We say, *vis argent*, quick-silver.

EXERCISE*.

America will be a flourishing Empire.

He is a fanatic preacher.

They are credulous men.

We had warm weather.

He has a black coat.

She has a brown complexion.

I have a Portuguese servant.

We shall have cold nights.

He is a comical fellow.

She has an odd temper.

England is a temperate country.

You are a faithful friend.

He has a triangular field.

You have a learned brother.

They had an Irish general.

She has a white skin.

Will you have a square table?

They had a Maltese galley.

He is a Venetian nobleman.

* The grammar must be applied to, for the conjugation of the verbs *avoir* and *être*.

R U L E II.

- 10 When a substantive has two adjectives joined to it, they are generally placed after it; but if three or more adjectives, they must absolutely come after the substantive, with the conjunction *et* before the last.

E X A M P L E S.

He is a civil and obliging man.

Il est un homme poli et obligeant.

She is a tender, virtuous and affectionate mother.

Elle est une mere tendre, vertueuse, et affectionnée.

E X E R C I S E.

You have a large and convenient house.

They have brave, robust, and able sailors.

He has a young and beautiful wife.

They had a hard, tedious, and tiresome task.

R U L E III.

- 11 Adjectives signifying dimension, as long, thick, wide, &c. which come after the word of measure in English, are placed before it in French, and are immediately followed by the preposition *de*.

E X A M P L E.

The camp is in a plain ten miles long.

This sentence must be thus construed in French:

The camp is in a plain long of ten miles.

Le camp est dans une plaine longue de dix miles.

EXERCISE.

He has a pond fifty yards broad and twelve deep.
 They have an army one hundred thousand men strong.
 The window is three feet and half broad.
 The doors are seven feet, three inches high.

RULE IV.

Sometimes the adjective of dimension is turned in 12 French into the substantive it is derived from; in that case the number expressing the measure goes before, as in English, and is both preceded and followed by the particle *de*.

EXAMPLE.

A house 30 feet long, 24 broad and 100 high.
 That sentence may be thus construed: a house 30 feet of length, 24 of breadth, and 100 of height.

Une maison de trente pieds de longueur, vingt quatre de largeur, et cent de hauteur.

We say sometimes by manner of abbreviation:

Une maison de trente pieds de long, vingt quatre de large, et cent de haut.

EXERCISE.

A wall two miles long, 20 feet high, and 4 feet broad.

He has a park fifteen miles round.

I have a garden 300 fathoms long, and 120 broad,

RULE V.

When the adjective of dimension is expressed in 13 French, by a substantive, as in the preceding rule: the verb *to be*, must be translated into French by the

the same tense and person of the verb *avoir*; and in that case the number of measure does not require the particle *de* before it.

E X A M P L E S.

My brother *is* six feet high.
 My brother *has* six feet of height.
Mon frere a six pieds de hauteur.
Mon frere a six pieds de haut.

- 14 N. B. In this and the preceding rule, the English language takes sometimes the preposition *in* before the noun of dimension; which preposition, as we have seen, is translated into French by *de*.

E X A M P L E.

The wall is six feet in height and ten in breadth.
La muraille a six pieds de haut et dix de large.

E X E R C I S E.

The wall is three feet four inches deep.
 The ditch was six fathom broad.
 Mount Etna is four miles high, perpendicularly.
 The silk is three yards wide.
 The trees are fifty feet high.

R U L E VI.

- 15 The following adjectives must always go before their substantives, notwithstanding what has been said (Rule 9.)

Beau, fine; *bon*, good; *brave*, brave; *cher*, dear; *grand*, great; *gros*, big; *jeune*, young; *mauvais*, bad; *méchant*, wicked; *meilleur*, better; *moindre*, less; *petit*, small; *saint*, holy; *vieux*, old.

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

Henry the fourth of France, was a *good* king, and a *great* warrior.

Henry quatre roi de France étoit un bon roi et un grand guerrier.

E X E R C I S E.

We have young officers, but brave soldiers.

They have an old servant very affectionate to the family.

He is a wicked man and a bad father.

C H A P. IV.

On the Declension of Nouns.

AS the grammar furnishes us with rules to de- 16
cline every kind of nouns, the difficulty lies only in considering well, what sort of noun is to be translated; whether proper or common, masculine or feminine. These points being cleared up, the noun must be chosen in the grammar that is to serve as a pattern: and the noun to be translated must be declined accordingly.

N. B. The genitive case is marked in English by the particles *of*, or *from*, and the dative by the particle *to*.

E X E R C I S E.

I have the speech of the president of the congress to the states of America.

The exhortation of the general to the soldiers of the army.

The

The kind advice of the mother to the daughter.

The collection of books of the library of the college of Dublin.

I have the history of the wars between the Emperor of the Turks, and the Empress of Russia.

He has a prospect of the sea, and of the mountains of the county of Wicklow, from the windows of the castle.

We had some bad days at the beginning of the Spring, but we shall have a continuation of fine weather towards the end of Summer.

She has a new gown from the shop of a great mercer, in the city of London.

The speech of the chancellor to the house of lords*, was full of principles of Roman virtue.

- 17 We must observe that an adjective being placed between the article and the substantive in English, does not make any difference for the declension of the substantive, and the adjective goes before or after, according to what has been said No. 16.

R U L E I.

- 18 The genitive case is sometimes formed in the English language by adding an *s* with an apostrophe before it to the nominative: as, *Soloman's wisdom, the men's wit, Venus's beauty*: or the apostrophe only, when the noun is in the plural and ends with an *s*: as *the stationers' arms*: but in French we do not use such a transposition; all those sentences must, therefore, be translated by placing the genitive after the nominative, as No. 16.

E X A M P L E.

He has the king's favour.

We must construe,

He has the favour of the king.

Il a la faveur du roi.

E X E R -

• *Chambre des seigneurs,*

EXERCISE.

He has Shakespear's works in twelve volumes, and Milton's Paradife Loft.

He had the duke's brother at dinner yesterday.

The mayor's son was here to-day.

Love of liberty is in every man's heart.

RULE II.

If two substantives immediately follow one another 20 in English, we transpose them in French, and place the particle *de* only between them:

EXAMPLE.

The best speaker had a *gold medal*.

Le meilleur orateur eut une médaille d'or.

N. B. In that example, the *e* of the particle *de* is struck off, because the next word begins with a vowel.

EXERCISE.

The old man has guineas in the iron chest.

Jupiter had access to Danae by means of a gold rain.

I have a good bottle of old Port wine.

I was at Patrick's church, Sunday last, and we had an excellent sermon.

C H A P. V.

Of the Conjugation of Verbs.

21 **T**O conjugate a verb, is to go through the different variations it is susceptible of, in regard to time, and to the different persons to whom it may be applied.

22 No part of any verb is to be found in the dictionary, except the present tense of the infinitive mood, which is, properly speaking, the *radix* of verbs, as it expresses the action without any particular circumstance of person or time: as, *chanter*, to sing. Therefore, whatever tense of a verb is to be translated, it is the present of the infinitive that must be looked for; being found, the termination of it must be considered, as the verbs of the French tongue have been divided by the grammarians into several conjugations, which vary according to the last syllable of that tense.

After having ascertained what conjugation the verb belongs to, it is necessary to consider what tense and person you have to form; an example will be more conducive to explain this matter.

We shall suppose that we have to translate those words: I sung.—To sing is the word to be looked for in the dictionary: *chanter* is the French of it.—I sung, is the first person singular of the preterperfect tense. *Chanter* ends in *er*, therefore it belongs to the conjugation of the verb *donner*, which is the model by which all French verbs ending in that syllable are to be formed.

Being sure of the tense and person to be formed, and of the conjugation which it belongs to, the same tense and person must be examined in that conjugation; then the difference that is between it and the present tense

tense of the infinitive mood must be ascertained, and whatever you find that difference to be, the same must be observed in regard to the word you have found in the dictionary; as in the preceding example I sung. If the first person of the preterperfect is looked for in the verb *donner*, it will be found to be *je donnai*. The difference between *donnai* and *donner* is, that *ai* is put in place of *er*; therefore strike off *er* from *chanter*, put *ai* in its place, the word *chantai* will be the tense required.

For another example, let us suppose we have to translate into French these words, I did obey; I look in the dictionary for, to obey: I find *obéir* which belongs to the conjugation of the verb *punir* * as it ends by *ir*, I did obey, is the first person of the imperfect tense. The first person of the imperfect tense of the verb *punir* is *je punissois*: the difference between *punissois* and *punir* is that *r* is struck off and *issois* put in the place of it: I shall make the same alteration with *obéir*, and *j'obeissois* will be the word required.

Those two examples are sufficient to guide a learner through the different conjugations; but we must observe that what has been said is for regular verbs only, as the irregular ones must be conjugated as the grammar directs; therefore, before we conjugate the verb according to the regular conjugations, it is necessary to examine in the list of the irregular, that we may be certain the verb to be conjugated is not in it.

* I make use here of the conjugation of verbs as laid down in my Rudiments; but if the learner makes use of another grammar, it will be an easy matter for his master to point him out the proper conjugations.

EXERCISES.

Verbs ending in er.

TENSES.

I sing,
 We danced,
 They walked,
 He shall comfort,
 You did think,
 She loves,
 We shall cut,
 I was singing,
 He honoured,
 They curl,
 They watered,
 He should lend,
 He might shut up,
 I might keep,
 They shall besiege,
 Sing thou,
 Let them look,
 You may dine,
 I shall sup,
 They may imagine,
 He pulls,
 They rob,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Chanter.
danſer.
marcher.
conſoler.
penſer.
aimer.
couper.
chanter.
honorer.
friſer.
arroſer.
prêter.
enfermer.
garder.
aſſiéger.
chanter.
regarder.
diner.
souper.
imaginer.
tirer.
voler.

Verbs ending in ir.

TENSES.

Thou ſervedſt,
 I applaud,
 She grows pale,
 He ſhall grow tall,
 He whitens,
 They ſhall fill,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Servir.
applaudir.
pâlir.
grandir.
blanchir.
remplir.

I ſhould

TENSES.

I should obey,
They enslaved,
He might incense,
You may serve,
They reflected,
He departs,
You repented,
He dazzles,
She shall grow young again,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

obéir.
asservir.
âigrir.
servir.
réflectir.
partir.
ressentir.
éblouir.
rajeunir.

Verbs ending in *evoin*.

We must observe that the word, not, is translated 23 into French by two Words, viz. *ne* and *pas*; *ne* is placed before the verb, and *pas* after it, as, I do not speak, *je ne parle pas*.

TENSES.

He owes,
You did not conceive,
He shall not perceive,
He deceived,
Let him owe,
He did not collect,
She did not perceive,
He may not deceive,
You might not conceive,
Let us collect,
I do not owe,
He did deceive,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Devoir.
concevoir.
appercevoir.
décevoir.
devoir.
percevoir.
appercevoir.
décevoir.
concevoir.
percevoir.
devoir.
décevoir.

For Verbs ending in } *eindre*,
 } *aindre*,
 } *oindre*,

TENSES.

They pity,
You shall enclose,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Plaindre.
enceindre.

TENSES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

They infringed,	<i>enfreindre.</i>
They should not reach,	<i>atteindre.</i>
I should dye,	<i>teindre.</i>
He may not restrain,	<i>restreindre.</i>
He might enjoin,	<i>enjoindre.</i>
They do not constrain,	<i>contraindre.</i>
He extinguished,	<i>êteindre.</i>
He was dying,	<i>teindre.</i>
Infringe thou,	<i>enfreindre.</i>
They enjoined,	<i>enjoindre.</i>
He does not infringe,	<i>enfreindre.</i>

For Verbs ending in oître.

He acknowledges,	<i>Reconnoître.</i>
You should appear,	<i>paroître.</i>
He grows,	<i>croître.</i>
He shall not disappear,	<i>disparoître.</i>
He should decrease,	<i>décroître.</i>
He will make his appearance,	<i>comparoître.</i>
He was growing,	<i>croître.</i>
He decreases,	<i>décroître.</i>
They acknowledged,	<i>reconnoître.</i>
He may disappear,	<i>disparoître.</i>
They were decreasing,	<i>décroître.</i>

For Verbs ending in uire.

He shines,	<i>Luire.</i>
They shall construct,	<i>construire.</i>
He conducted,	<i>conduire.</i>
He should destroy,	<i>détruire.</i>
He produced,	<i>produire.</i>
He will instruct,	<i>instruire.</i>
He might not reduce,	<i>réduire.</i>
He does not hurt,	<i>nuire.</i>
He induced,	<i>induire.</i>
Let them destroy,	<i>détruire.</i>

He

TENSES.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

He did conduct,
She should hurt,

conduire.
nuire.

For Verbs ending in {
endre
ondre
andre

He does not expect,

attendre.

He should spill,

répandre.

They pretended,

prétendre.

He will split,

fendre.

He might come down,

descendre.

She confounded,

confondre.

He shall melt,

fondre.

He shall not shear,

tondre.

They did hang,

pendre.

He does not extend,

étendre.

He may bend,

détendre.

Let him come down,

descendre.

Let us answer,

répondre.

Ye do not hear,

entendre.

C H A P. VI.

Of Reflective Verbs.

THOSE verbs, for the termination of their 24
tenses, follow the rules of the different conjugations (22) the addition of the pronouns *me, te, se* in the singular, and *nous, vous, se* in the plural is what they differ from the rest in: as may be seen in the examples of the grammar. We must observe that those verbs take, for the formation of their compound tenses, the verb *être* in the same tense and person as the verb to have is in English.

N. B. If

N. B. If the verb begins with a vowel, and if the pronoun before it ends with an *e*, that *e* is struck off, and an apostrophe placed instead of it, as *s'imaginer*, *s'entendre*, *s'amuser*.

E X E R C I S E.

TENSES.

He fancies,
I diverted myself,
He has tormented himself,
Warm yourself,
He exposes himself,
You have complained,
They abandoned themselves,
He instructed himself,
He should imagine,
They betrayed themselves,
He loves himself,
They are not growing rich,
I walked,
You shall apply,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

s'imaginer.
se divertir.
se tourmenter.
se chauffer.
s'exposer.
se plaindre.
s'abandonner.
s'instruire.
s'imaginer.
se trahir.
s'aimer.
s'enrichir.
se promener.
s'appliquer.

Regular Verbs of all Conjugations mixed promiscuously.

He breakfasted,
They shall match,
I should return,
He will grow up,
I divert myself,
I have walked,
I was singing,
I might go down,
He disobeyed,
I forgot,
I may spill,
They may injoin,

Déjeuner.
assortir.
retourner.
croître.
se divertir.
se promener.
chanter.
descendre.
désobéir.
oublier.
répondre.
enjoindre.

TENSES.

Do not weary yourself,
Let him cool himself,
He seduced,
They will not draw back,
I should correspond,
You may find,
He did collect,
They expect,
He shall walk,
We shall let,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

se fatiguer.
se rafraîchir.
séduire.
reculer.
correspondre.
trouver.
recueillir.
s'attendre.
se promener.
louer.

R U L E.

The following verbs neuter join their supine to the verb *être*, instead of the verb *avoir*, to form their compound tenses : and that verb must be in the same tense and person as *to have* in English. 25

Accourir, to run to.

Aller, to go.

Aborder, to land.

Arriver, to arrive.

Décéder, to die.

Descendre, to come down.

Devenir, to become.

Entrer, to come in.

Monter, to go up.

Mourir, to die.

Naître, to be born.

Partir, to set out.

Retourner, to return.

Sortir, to go out.

Tomber, to fall.

Venir, to come.

And all compounds of *venir*, except *prévenir* to prevent.

E X A M P L E.

I should have set out if the weather had not become so bad.

Je serois parti si le tems n'étoit pas devenu si mauvais.

E X E R.

E X E R C I S E.

He fell, but he got up again.

I should not have gone out, if I had expected you.

My brother has gone in, but he will come out again in a short time.

A great misfortune has befallen the people by the misconduct of the ministry.

He had agreed to dine with me yesterday.

C H A P. VII.

On the Articles.

R U L E.

THE definite article is to be placed before the substantive, in French, whether or not it is expressed in English, when we mention the whole species or a determined part of it.

E X A M P L E.

Men were created for the glory of God.

Les hommes furent créés pour la gloire de Dieu.

The *Men* who opposed his design shall repent.

Les hommes qui se sont opposés à son dessein se repentiront.

In the first of these examples, the whole species is understood: and in the second, a determined part of it.

E X E R C I S E.

The object of wars is victory.

The natural place of virtue is next to liberty.

All men being born equal, slavery is against nature.
The Philosophers reckon four elements, air, earth, fire and water.

The effeminacy of the people of hot countries has been the cause of their * slavery.

The Roman soldiers fought for glory, and not for money, like vile gladiators.

The natural effect of trade, is to incline the people to peace.

R U L E II.

Names of mountains, rivers, counties and kingdoms, require the definite article. 26

E X A M P L E.

Vesuvius is a Volcano.

Le Vesuve est un Volcan.

The Thames is a source of riches to England.

La Tamise est une source de richesses pour l'Angleterre.

N. B. When the names of countries are used as coming from or going out, they are preceded by the particle *de* only. 27

E X A M P L E.

She comes from Holland.

Elle vient de Hollande.

He is gone out of France.

Il est sorti de France.

Those names are also preceded by the particle *de* when one speaks of sovereignty, dignity or title. 28

The King of England, the Prince of Wales, the Bishop of Osnaburg.

Le roi d'Angleterre, le Prince de Galles, l'Eveque d'Osnabrug.

* Leur.

Names

- 29 Names of countries which are mentioned, as *to live in*, or *going to*, are preceded by the particle *en* only.

E X A M P L E.

My brother was in Spain, but he is gone to Portugal.

Mon frere etoit en Espagne mais il est allé en Portugal.

- 30 N. B. Speaking of the Indies which is plural by nature : *coming from* or *going out*, is expressed by *des*, and *living in* or *going to* by *aux*.

E X A M P L E.

He goes to the Indies.

Il va aux Indes.

He comes from the Indies.

Il vient des Indes.

E X E R C I S E.

I went to France in the beginning of the spring.

He lives in Italy with his brother.

The Emperor of Germany set out from France towards the middle of the spring.

My father is returned from the Indies with a handsome fortune.

I went from England to Russia in twenty-seven days.

The troops of the King of Prussia are under a severe discipline.

R U L E III.

- 31 A noun substantive, following a verb, has very often no article; in such a case, the word *some* is understood : if the verb is in an affirmative sense, the substantive must be in the genitive case.

E X A M P L E.

EXAMPLE.

They have friends and money.

Ils ont des amis et de l'argent.

But if the verb be in a negative sense, the noun is preceded by the particle *de* only. 32

EXAMPLE.

They have no books.

Ils n'ont pas de livres.

If there is an adjective between the substantive and the verb, it must be preceded by the particle *de* only, let it be in a negative or affirmative sense. 33

EXAMPLE.

He has good friends.

Il a de bons amis.

He has no fine horses.

Il n'a pas de beaux chevaux.

EXERCISE.

He who has disposition and does not use it deserves blame.

They have curious books in their library, and they purchased old manuscripts from the foreign universities.

He has children who are the comfort of his old age.

He borrowed money from me, and gave good securities.

The general has good officers, and brave soldiers under his command.

The King of France has beautiful pictures in the garden of Versailles.

Conquerors purchase fame with the blood of their subjects.

D

I shall

I shall stay in Ireland until the end of August, and towards that * time I shall go to France.

R U L E III.

34. When the noun substantive is neither used in its universal sense nor in any fixed and particular part of its signification, it must be put in French in the genitive.—The word *some* may always precede it in that case in English, though it is often left out in the sentence.

E X A M P L E.

Give me some bread and butter.

Donnez moi du pain et du beurre.

I know *men* who prefer riches to virtue.

Je connois des hommes qui préfèrent les richesses à la vertu.

E X E R C I S E.

He had partridges, quails, and some larks for his || dinner.

I bought books from the greatest bookseller in London.

Will you lend money to † my brother.

They send casks of beef to France every year.

I have friends who would use their ‡ endeavours in my § favour.

35. N. B. If the substantive is preceded by an adjective, it requires only the preposition *de* before it, as.

There are wicked men.

Il y a de méchants hommes.

* Ce temps là.

|| Son.

† Mon.

‡ Leurs.

§ Ma.

EXERCISE.

He had good meat and bad bread.
We have brave officers and intrepid soldiers in our army.
I bought good stockings in Paris.

R U L E IV.

Substantives, adjectives or adverbs expressing quantity, require the Particle *de* only before the noun that follows. 36

E X A M P L E.

There are soldiers enough.
Il y a assez de soldats.
He takes less pains.
Il prend moins de peines.

We must observe that, if the rest of the sentence determines the sense of the noun that follows the words of quantity, that noun must be put in the genitive case. 37

E X A M P L E.

Have you a little of the wine I bought from him?
Avez vous un peu du vin que j'ai acheté de lui ?

E X E R C I S E.

He has many flatterers and no friends.
Many people think the French language difficult to learn.

He went to market, and bought one hundred of apples, four dozen of raspberries, and twenty pounds of currants.

Will you lend him a dozen bottles of wine ?

He has many curious prints in his parlour.

He spent a great deal of his father's money.

Give me one hundred of the apples which you gathered yesterday.

They lost no ships in the engagement, but they had many men killed.

R U L E V.

- 38 *Que!* being used in exclamation; *jamais, rien, quoi, quelque chose*, govern the particle *de* before the noun that follows.

E X A M P L E.

What luck he has !

Qu'il a de bonheur !

He does nothing well.

Il ne fait rien de bien.

E X E R C I S E.

What eloquence is found in Cicero's speech against Catiline !

Nothing true was said in his favour.

He did something noble for the good of his country.

What fortitude there was * in Cato when he took leave of his friends !

R U L E VI.

- 39 The adverb *bien* taken for *beaucoup*, much, requires the following noun in the genitive case ; but *beaucoup* takes only the particle *de* before the next noun.

E X A M -

* *Il y avoit.*

EXAMPLE.

He has much money.

Il a bien de l'argent.

Il a beaucoup d'argent.

EXERCISE.

Many people think and speak in a different manner.

Many brave men have lost their lives in that unfortunate war.

RULE VII.

Nouns of measure, weight, &c. of things bought and sold, which are preceded in English by the article *a* or *an*, take the definite article before them in French.

EXAMPLE.

I bought hay to-day at six shillings *a* load.

J'ai acheté du foin aujourd'hui à six shillings la charretée.

Eggs cost six-pence *a* hundred.

Les œufs content six sols le cent.

EXERCISE.

Will you take a guinea *a* dozen? No; but I will take ten pounds *a* hundred.

Coals sell for sixteen shillings *a* ton.

I bought this * silk for fourteen shillings *a* yard, in the Irish warehouse.

D 3

RULE

* Cette,

R U L E VIII.

- 41 When the proposition *with* does not mean society or union, it is often translated into French by the article of the genitive case.

E X A M P L E.

I am delighted with the pleasure of your company.
Je suis charmé du plaisir de votre compagnie.

E X E R C I S E.

A city encompassed with walls, and defended by a good garrison, is proper to * oppose the progress of the enemy. He who † is endued with excellent qualities, deserves the esteem of mankind.

True philosophers are always content with their own condition; but they are very rare.

R U L E IX.

- 42 The article must be repeated in French before as many nouns as there are in a sentence:

E X A M P L E.

Seas, lakes, gulphs, streights, canals, and rivers, form the aqueous part of the globe.

Les mers, les lacs, les golphes, les détroits, les canaux, et les rivières, forment la partie aqueuse du globe.

E X E R C I S E.

Bread and water are sufficient to ‡ support life.

Prudence and intrepidity are two qualities necessary to a general.

Continents,

* A.

† Celui qui.

‡ Pour.

Continents, islands, peninsulas, isthmus's, promontories, capes, mountains and coasts, are the different parts into which the terrestrial globe is divided by geographers.

CH A P. VIII.

On Personal Pronouns.

R U L E I.

IF a personal pronoun is the accusative of a verb, 43 it must always precede it immediately, unless the verb be in the imperative mood; for, in that case, the pronoun follows, as in English.

E X A M P L E.

He loves *you* with all his heart.

Il vous aime de tout son cœur.

Love *them* as they love *you*.

Aimez les comme ils vous aiment.

E X E R C I S E.

When Julius Cæsar entered the Senate, a croud of conspirators attacked him, and pierced him with daggers. Brutus, even Brutus, wounded his father in several places.

I brought a nosegay from the garden; give it to your sister.

Let him go and forgive him for this time*; but if he does it again, punish him severely.

Will you lend them or sell them?

Undress the children and put them to bed.

A king of France is a happy monarch; all his subjects love him, and are ready to † spend their fortunes, and to lose their lives for him.

R U L E

* Cette fois.

† à.

R U L E II.

- 44 In English there is often an adverb placed between the nominative and the verb; but the adverb always comes after the verb in French.

E X A M P L E.

I always said.

Je dis toujours.

They never believe.

Ils ne croient jamais.

E X E R C I S E.

You always scold me for nothing.

I sincerely believe he is an honest man.

True merit seldom finds a reward

R U L E III.

- 45 Several pronouns of different persons being joined in the nominative of the same verb, the verb must be in the plural number, and of the highest person.

N. B. The first person is called higher than the second, and the second higher than the third.

E X A M P L E.

You and I shall learn French together.

Vous et moi apprendrons le François ensemble.

You and he are good friends.

Vous et lui etes bons amis.

- 46 Several pronouns being joined as in the foregoing examples in the nominative of a verb: *I* is translated in French by *moi*, and not *je*; *he* by *lui* and not *il*; *they* by *eux* and not *ils*.

E X A M -

E X A M P L E.

You and I will go to the play to-morrow.

Vous et moi irons à la comédie demain.

My cousin and he were in the country yesterday.

Mon cousin et lui furent à la campagne hier.

N. B. If there is a noun substantive amongst the 47
nominatives, it must be looked upon in this rule as a
pronoun of the third person; all substantives being of
the third person.

E X E R C I S E.

I have engaged two places in the stage; you and he
shall set off to-morrow morning early.

My brother and he are not friends, but they shall be
soon reconciled by the interposition of my father.

My sister, you, and I, will go to the garden this evening,
if we can get leave from my mother.

I have seen your brother at the Cape of Good Hope;
he and I lived in the same house.

My brother, you, and I, have neglected the precepts
and admonitions which were so often repeated to us by
our friends.

R U L E IV.

A personal pronoun being in the dative case, and 48
following a verb in English, must precede it in French,
unless the verb be in the imperative mood; for, in
that case the pronoun follows the English construction,
and in both cases the particle *à* is left out in French.

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

He gave me a guinea for her, and I brought it to her immediately.

Il me donna une guinée pour elle, et je la lui portai aussi tôt.

If you go to Spain send me a cask of the best wine, and when you come back, bring me a box of raisins.

Si vous allez en Espagne, envoyez moi un muid du meilleur vin, et quand vous reviendrez, apportez moi une boîte de raisins secs.

E X E R C I S E.

Will you lend me the first volume of Shakespear's works? Speak to him and I shall be obliged to you.

My letters shall be directed to him.

When a Roman General made his triumphal entry, a herald used to say to him from time to time, remember that thou art mortal.

If we had proposed to them honourable terms, they would have accepted them.

Lend me four guineas, if you please *.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 49 If the dative of a pronoun personal is joined to a verb expressing motion, as, *aller, venir, courir, marcher, &c.* it must always come after that verb, and be preceded by the particle *à*.

E X A M P L E.

I ran to *him* and embraced him.

Je courus à lui et l'embrassai.

E X E R-

* S'il vous plaît.

E X E R C I S E.

At the battle of Fontenoy, the French general said to the soldiers : * there are the enemy : march to them, and die or conquer.

He came to me in his distress, and I helped him.

Go to him, ask his pardon, and ask him to forget your faults.

, R U L E V.

The accusatives *le, la, les* are placed after these 50 datives, *me, ie, se, nous, vous*, when they both come before the verb ; and the same accusatives, *le, la, les*, are placed before the datives *lui* and *leur*, in the same case.

N. B. *It* being the accusative, is translated in 51 French by *le* or *la*, according to the gender of the substantive spoken of.

E X A M P L E.

He gave it to me.

Il me le donna.

I gave it to you.

Je vous le donnai.

He fancies it.

Il se le figure.

I shall give it to him.

Je le lui donnerai.

You give it to him.

Vous le lui donnez.

He shall give it to them.

Il le leur donnera.

* Voila.

EXER-

E X E R C I S E.

We shall bring them to you when we * have received them.

When will you send them to me ?

These horses which I sold to you, I had shewn them to him.

If you will sell them to me, I shall lend them to her.

Our king wants our assistance, we shall lend it to him.

I knew it ; you had told it me before.

I have bought you horses : I will send them to you towards the beginning of the next week †.

Will you give it me soon ?

R U L E V.

- 52 If the verb be in the first or second person of the imperative mood without a negation, the two pronouns must come after it by placing the accusative before the dative.

E X A M P L E.

Give it to me.

Donnez le moi.

Bring it to him.

Apportez le lui.

Let us give it to her.

Donnons le lui.

- 53 But if there is a negation, or if the imperative is in the third person, then the pronouns precede the verb, as was said (48.)

E X A M P L E.

Do not give it to her.

Ne le lui donnez pas.

* Nous aurons.

† La semaine prochaine.

Let

Let her give it to me.

Qu'elle me le donne.

EXERCISE.

If he wants ten guineas, lend them to him.

Do not tell it to her, if you have any regard for me.

Give them to me to-day, or do not give them to me at all*.

Let her bring it to me to-morrow.

Let us sell them to him at prime cost.

Send her to me, and I shall give her the silk.

RULE V.

If two imperatives come together with a conjunction between them, the second will have the pronoun personal before it. 54

EXAMPLE.

Fear him and respect him.

Craignez le et le respectez.

Write to your brother and advise him to behave better.

Ecrivez à votre frere et lui conseillez de se mieux conduire.

EXERCISE.

See her and comfort her.

Write to him and tell him his ship is arrived at Nantz.

Speak to me, and forgive me.

RULE VI.

Voici here is, *voilà* there is, will have the pronoun personal before them.

E

EXAM-

* Du tout.

E X A M P L E.

There he is.
Le voilà.

Here I am.
Me voici.

R U L E VII.

- 55 When we speak of the country, trade, quality, profession or sex of a person, we may use *ce* for all gender and number, instead of the third person of the pronoun personal.

E X A M P L E.

He is a Frenchman.
Il est François.
C'est un François.
They are shoemakers.
Ce sont des cordonniers.

E X E R C I S E.

They are merchants going to the fair of Amsterdam.
He is an honest man, I shall employ him always.
They are princes of the Roman empire.
She is the wife of an eminent farmer in the north of Ireland.

R U L E VIII.

- 56 The verbs *être*, (when it signifies to belong to) *se fier*, *songer*, *penfer*, do not require any transposition of the pronouns personal joined to them.

E X A M P L E.

I think of him when I do not see him.
Je pense à lui quand je ne le vois pas.

It

It is to me to help him.

C'est à moi à le secourir.

E X E R C I S E.

If you will trust him, he will deserve your confidence.

He thinks of you more than you think of him.

It is to him to deserve his father's love by his attention to his duty.

R U L E IX.

1st. It happens sometimes that several verbs have 57 for nominative the same pronoun personal; in that case, the pronoun must be repeated, if the verbs are not in the same tense. 2dly, If they pass from a negation to an affirmation, or from an affirmation to a negation; and lastly, when they are parted by any of the conjunctions *mais, même, cependant, néanmoins, &c.* in any other case the pronoun must not be repeated.

E X A M P L E.

You took him by the hand and embraced him.

Vous lui prîtes la main et l'embrassâtes.

You esteem him, but you do not love him.

Vous l'estimez, mais vous ne l'aimez pas.

I love him, and shall always love him.

Je l'aime, et je l'aimerai toujours.

E X E R C I S E.

You promise but do not keep your word.

She is and always was a lovely girl.

I do believe and will always believe the truths mentioned in this book.

He laughs now, but he will soon see his laughs changed into tears.

I am angry, but I do not hate him.

You do and undo for ever.

He reads well, but he does not write.

R U L E X.

- 58 A question is asked in French by bringing the nominative after the verb, if that nominative be a pronoun personal.

E X A M P L E.

Does *he* believe you?

Vous croit il?

- 59 If the verb is in the third person singular, and ends with a vowel, instead of *il* and *elle* we say and write *l'il*, *l'elle*.

E X A M P L E.

Does he speak to you?

Vous parle l'il?

- 60 In compound tenses the pronoun comes after the auxiliary, and not after the supine.

E X A M P L E.

Did they dance?

Ont elles dansé?

Did you believe what he said?

Avez vous cru ce qu'il disoit?

E X E R C I S E.

Scevola said to Porcenna: Do you think to frighten me with the apprehension of torments? Do you think the fear of death has any impresson on a Roman mind? No, I am ready to lose my life, if that loss can preserve my country from destruction.

Does

- Does he love his sister better than his brother?
 Did you know him? Did you ever see him?
 Why did you promise when you had no intention to give?
 Did he write to his father?
 Does he ask more than is due to him?
 Does she dance well? Has she learned a long time?

R U L E X I.

When in asking a question the nominative of the verb is a noun substantive, it must precede the verb, and a pronoun personal of a gender and number correspondent to the substantive must follow the verb. 61

E X A M P L E.

- Does your father know it?
Votre pere le sait il?
 Is not your sister married?
Votre sœur n'est elle pas mariée?

E X E R C I S E.

- When you presented your petition, did the duke promise to support you?
 Has that book been wrote by the famous Goldsmith?
 Was any man ever happy who had a guilty conscience?
 Is your cousin returned from his travels?
 Did your father give his consent to your voyage?
 Does the reading of history please you more than novels?

R U L E X I I.

We use *moi* instead of *je*, *lui* instead of *il*, and *sur* instead of *ils*, in answering a question, or after a preposition, or the verb impersonal *c'est*. 62

E X A M P L E.

Who said so? he. He came after him.
Qui dit cela? lui. Il vint après lui.

E X E R C I S E.

Who went to the play with you yesterday? he and his daughter.

He is before me now, but I shall be before him soon after Christmas.

Do you know who brought this news to the Castle? it is he.

It is he who told you that falsehood.

R U L E X I I I.

- 63 In common conversation we use the second person plural, though we speak only to one person.

E X A M P L E.

Sir, how are you?

Monfieur, comment vous portez vous?

- 64 The second person singular is used in the following cases.

1st. It denotes intimate friendship, as

Come here, my friend, and listen to my counsels.

Viens ici, mon ami, et fais attention à mes conseils.

2dly, To express tender love, as

How could I express to thee the sincerity of my love.

Comment pourois je t'exprimer la sincérité de ma flamme.

3dly, Pa-

3dly, Parental affection, as

My son, remember a father's advice.

Mon fils, souviens toi des avis d'un pere.

4thly, It shews also anger, bitter vexation, as

And thou, all shaking thunder;

Strike flat the thick rotundity of the world;

Crack nature's mould, all germins spill at once,

That make ungrateful man.

Et toi foudre qui ébranles toute chose, applatis la masse épaisse du globe; fracasse le moule de la nature, et dissipe tout à coup les germes qui donnent l'être à l'homme ingrat.

5thly, It implies absolute authority, as from a master to a slave,

Hast thou, spirit,

Perform'd to point the tempest as I bade thee?

Esprit, as tu excité la tempete, comme je te l'avois ordonné?

CHAP. IX.

On the possessive pronoun.

THOSE pronouns, both simple and compound, 65
must always agree in gender with the substantive they relate to.

EXAMPLE.

My horse is stronger than yours.

Mon cheval est plus fort que le votre.

N. B. They both generally agree also in number with the substantive; but there is an exception for the compound pronoun, if there is in the sense of the sentence a reason why it should not; as in the preceding example, *My horse is stronger than yours.* If *yours* relates to more than one horse, you must say *les vôtres*; though *horse* be singular.

EXERCISE.

Our soldiers are more numerous than theirs.

My friends were more faithful than yours; but yours were more powerful than mine.

Their country is in a situation more advantageous for trade than ours; but ours is more agreeable by the salubrity of the climate.

I should be glad of the pleasure of your company to tea and cards this evening, if you have not another engagement.

My sword is longer than your's, but your hanger is sharper than mine.

When your brothers are here I will shew them my library, which contains books more instructive than yours.

Have you given to your cousin the letters of his father?

Pitt earl of Chatham brought his country to the pitch of glory to which it arrived; his life was devoted to its service, and even his death was a proof of his patriotism.

RULE I.

66 The pronoun possessive simple of the third person agrees in English with the gender of the person or thing which possesses; but in French it must agree with the substantive it is joined to.

EXAMPLE.

Her brother is not her friend.

Son frere n'est pas son ami.

EXER-

EXERCISE.

The mother loves her son, and the father his daughter.
Her chariot is the most elegant in the city of Dublin.

Elizabeth of England was a princess endued with the greatest qualities amongst the faults peculiar to her sex. The history of her reign gives us, in the person of Essex, her favourite, a striking proof of the inconstancy of human life.

RULE II.

The simple possessive pronoun must be repeated in French before every substantive, when in English it relates to more than one. 67

EXAMPLE.

My horses and carriage are elegant.

Mes chevaux et mon carrosse sont élégans.

EXERCISE.

His brother and sister are gone to the county of Kildare.

Their soldiers and sailors are the bravest in the universe.

His exercise and lesson were very difficult.

His house and garden shew the man of taste.

His soldiers and officers did their duty in the day of that memorable action.

RULE III.

In English the simple possessive pronoun is sometimes left out in speaking to relations or friends; but it must be used in French. 68

EXAM-

EXAMPLE.

Come here, friend, I have something to say to you.
Venez ici, mon ami, j'ai quelque chose à vous dire.

EXERCISE.

Sister, will you lend me your scissors?
 Cousin, I am glad to see you.
 Father, how are you this morning?

RULE IV.

- 69 The English compound possessive pronoun must be rendered in French, by the dative of the personal pronoun of the same person, when it is joined to the verb *etre*, signifying *to belong to*.

EXAMPLE.

That horse is *yours* and not *mine*.
Ce cheval est à vous et non pas à moi.
 And not,
Ce cheval est le votre, et non pas le mien.

EXERCISE.

Is that knife yours? No, it is mine.
 That nosegay's mine, I brought it from the garden.
 The pictures are mine, but the drawings and engravings are his.
 I assure you that book is mine.

RULE V.

- 70 We use the simple possessive pronouns, to render such English expressions as the following.

A friend

A friend of mine.

Un de mes amis.

A book of his.

Un de ses livres.

EXERCISE.

I had a knife of yours, but I have given it to your sister.

I spoke to an acquaintance of his.

RULE VI.

Simple possessive pronouns following some verbs in English, not signifying a distemper, are left out in French, and a pronoun personal of a person corresponding is used in its place. 71

EXAMPLE.

She washes *her* hands.

Elle se lave les mains.

EXERCISE.

He combs his hair.

A cannon ball shot off his arm, as he was going to reconnoitre the enemy.

Lend me your penknife, and I shall pare my nails.

Go to the hair-dresser, and tell him to come to cut my hair.

RULE VII.

A simple possessive pronoun coming before any limb or part of the body affected with cold, heat, hurt, wound or sore, is intirely left out in French, and the article put in its place. 72

EXAM-

EXAMPLE.

I have a pain in *my* left arm.

J'ai mal au bras gauche.

He received a wound in *his* right leg.

Il reçut une blessure à la jambe droite.

EXERCISE.

My finger is sore * since I burnt myself.

His leg is very straight and well made.

My head aches terribly †.

He has the gout in his hand, but there is no danger if it does not mount to his stomach.

Her mind is filled with a thousand romantic notions.

My fingers are ‡ so cold that I cannot write.

- 73 We may observe that in the above examples the verb *avoir* is used in the same tense and person as the verb *to be* is in English.

RULE VIII.

- 74 If the limb or part of the body is in the accusative, the verb must be preceded by the dative of a pronoun personal in the person required.

EXAMPLE.

He mangled my arm in a shocking manner.

Il m'a estropié le bras d'une manière terrible.

EXERCISE.

The same ball that kill'd his friend shot off his arm.

He was so vexed, that he bit his fingers.

She pricked her finger with her needle.

* Avoir mal au doigt. † Avoir mal à la tête.

‡ Avoir froid.

RULE.

R U L E IX.

The pronoun possessive being joined in English to the word *fake*, is expressed in French by a pronoun personal in the genitive case. 75

E X A M P L E.

For your fake.

Pour l'amour de vous.

For my fake.

Pour l'amour de moi.

E X E R C I S E.

I would go to the farthest part of the globe for her fake.

The Queen is loved, all her subjects would give their lives for her fake.

C H A P. X.

Of demonstrative Pronouns.

THE English Language is so confined in these pronouns, that it is no small difficulty to understand clearly the circumstances in which the different demonstrative pronouns are to be used in French; the following rules must therefore be closely attended to.

F

R U L E

R U L E I.

- 76 *Ce, cet, cette, ces*, are always immediately joined to a substantive with whom they agree in gender and number, as the grammars direct.

E X A M P L E.

That book.

Ce livre.

That man.

Cet homme.

Those girls.

Ces filles.

- 77 N. B. The particles *ci* and *là*, are sometimes put after the substantive preceded by the above pronouns; *ci* is used to specify an object near or present, and *là* an object far or absent.

E X A M P L E.

This man here.

Cet homme ci.

That woman there.

Cette femme là.

E X E R C I S E.

That man is no friend of yours (69.)

He bought those pictures too dear,

I gave five guineas for that horse.

This beauty has no need of these foreign ornaments;
they disfigure her charms.

Those soldiers are always ready to run to glory,

I do not want that book, but this one.

Those servants were not faithful.

This country will soon find the effect of that act of the
British parliament that grants a free trade.

R U L E II.

- 78 The English expressions *he who, he that, she who, she that, they who, they that*, are translated into French
by

by *celui qui*, *celle qui*, *ceux qui*, *celles qui*, and in that case the pronoun is the nominative of the verb.

E X A M P L E.

He who prefers riches to virtue is truly unhappy.

Celui qui prefere la richesse à la vertu est vraiment malheureux.

He that dies for his country shall live for ever in the annals of glory.

Celui qui meurt pour la patrie vivra éternellement dans les annales de la gloire.

N. B. The above sentences could have been construed in the following manner, by introducing the particle *là* after the demonstrative pronoun; but it is seldom done in common conversation. 79

Celui là est vraiment malheureux qui prefere la vertu aux richesses.

E X E R C I S E.

She who is the richest is not always the handsomest.

Those who escaped the sword perished by hunger.

Amongst the Samnites, he who distinguished himself by some noble warlike action, had a right to chuse a wife amongst the young girls who were assembled for that purpose; and she who was chosen was envied by her companions.

In the earliest time of the Roman republic, he that was suspected of ambition was banished.

He that never was in adversity, says an ancient philosopher, has seen the world but on one side.

He who blames every thing is a Misanthrope, and he that praises every thing is a mean flatterer.

R U L E III.

When the pronouns mentioned in the preceding rule are accusatives of the verb, as *she whom*, or *that, he* 80

whom, or that, &c. they are translated into French by celui que, celle que, ceux or celles que.

E X A M P L E.

She whom I love does not love me.

Celle que j'aime, ne m'aime pas.

Those that you knew are gone away.

Ceux que vous connoissiez sont partis.

E X E R C I S E.

He whom you saw with me yesterday is an intimate friend of mine.

She that you hated the most had a great esteem for you.

He that your brother killed in a duel was a brave man.

She whom they took into their house and reared as a child, betrayed them, and was a subject of affliction to them.

R U L E IV.

- 81 The English expression, *such as*, is translated into French by *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui, celles qui*, for the nominative; and *celui que, celle que, &c.* for the accusative.

E X A M P L E.

Such as do not always speak truth, do not deserve esteem.

Ceux qui ne disent pas toujours la vérité ne méritent pas d'être estimés.

E X E R C I S E.

Such as are not free from ambition, cannot pretend to the name of philosophers.

Such

Such as you know do not deserve your esteem, and much less your friendship.

Such as prefer riches to virtue and beauty in a wife, deserve to be unhappy all their life.

R U L E V.

The English personal pronouns *he, she* or *they*, being 82 followed by the genitive or dative of the relative pronoun *qui*, is translated into French by the demonstratives *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, according to the gender and number required in the sentence.

E X A M P L E.

He to whom I gave your book is not honest.

Celui à qui je donnai votre livre n'est pas honnête.

She that I am speaking of is not the youngest.

Celle dont je parle n'est pas la plus jeune.

E X E R C I S E.

He whose history you learned yesterday is arrived this morning.

She whom I applied to would not interfere in my favour.

They to whom the general directed those words were innocent of the crime.

She whose picture you saw is the Duke's youngest sister.

R U L E VI.

When the expression *what* is not used in asking a 83 question, but may be construed by *that which*, it is translated into French by *ce qui*, or *ce que*; the former being nominative, and the latter accusative.

E X A M P L E.

What charmed me was her innocence.

Ce qui me charma fut son innocence.

What you say is true.

Ce que vous dites est vrai.

E X E R C I S E.

You do not remember what you promised to me before my departure.

What made the ancient republics so powerful was the sobriety of the citizens, their love of liberty, and the unanimity which existed between all ranks of people.

What you tell me is incredible.

What two people know is not a secret.

N. B. In the first of the above examples, the verb *être*, that is at the beginning of the second part of the sentence, could be with propriety preceded by *ce*, as *ce qui me charma*, *ce fut son innocence*; but when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective, or supine, as in the second example, *ce* cannot be placed before it.

R U L E VII.

- 84 *Ceci* and *cela* are used in speaking of any single substantive inanimate that is present, *ceci* is used for the nearest object, *cela* for the farthest.

I will not have this, bring me that.

Je ne veux pas ceci, apportez moi cela.

- 85 *Ceci* and *cela* are also used sometimes to denote an entire sentence; and in that case *ceci* expresses what is going to be mentioned, and *cela* what has been mentioned, as in the following example.

We have lost the battle, that must surprise you.

Nous

Nous avons perdu la bataille : cela doit vous surprendre.

Ceci va vous surprendre, nous avons perdu la bataille.

E X E R C I S E.

That is true, I know it from good authority.

Take this, and carry it to my father.

The King fought at the head of his army; that animated his soldiers in such a manner, that they entirely overcame their enemies, and obtained a glorious victory.

This I will tell you as a secret, my sister is to be married this evening.

R U L E VIII.

Celui-ci and *celui-là* answer in French to the English expressions *the former* and *the latter*, and are used to express things before mentioned in the discourse, they must agree in gender and number with the substantive they refer to: *Celui-là* relates to the noun first mentioned, and *celui-ci* to the one last mentioned. 86

E X A M P L E.

The difference between beauty and learning is this, the former passes like a shadow; but we reap the advantages of the latter all the time of our life.

La différence entre la beauté et la science consiste en ce que celle-là passe comme une ombre, mais nous profitons de celle-ci pendant toute notre vie.

E X E R C I S E.

Heraclitus and Democritus were two cynic philosophers, the former constantly shed tears for the follies of mankind, the latter on the contrary, spent his whole life in laughing at them.

C H A P. XI.

Of relative Pronouns.

R U L E I.

- 87 **T**HE relative pronoun *qui* is nominative, and *que* accusative for all genders and numbers, both for animate and inanimate beings.

E X A M P L E.

The servant, who brought the letter, is below.

Le domestique qui a apporté la lettre est là bas.

I have read the book which you lent me.

J'ai lu le livre que vous m'avez prêté.

E X E R C I S E.

The Franks had the custom to elect for their king the bravest soldier, who, after his election, was carried on a shield round the camp.

The love of liberty and hatred for kings which prevailed in Greece, kept it in independency, and spread the republican government.

The Tartars who appear gentle and humane in peace are very inhuman conquerors: they always put to death the inhabitants of the cities which they take.

I saw, this morning, the gentleman * who dined with us yesterday.

Any man who has power is inclined to increase it.

The estate which he inherited, enables him to do good actions.

R U L E

* Le Monsieur.

R U L E II.

The accusative of the relative pronoun is often left out in English, but it must always be expressed in the French sentence. 88

E X A M P L E.

The girl he loves is lovely.
 The girl whom he loves is lovely.
La fille qu'il aime est aimable.
 The house you purchased is dear.
La maison que vous avez achetée est chère.

E X E R C I S E.

The letter he wrote me is very moving, it expresses the grief he feels for his loss.
 Will you lend me the book you lent my sister last week?
 He sold the horse I had given him.
 Call any servant you find in the hall.
 The wine we drank yesterday was excellent.
 I have not seen the silk she bought, but I rely on her taste; she has sufficiently proved it by the choice of the gowns she has.

R U L E III.

Of whom, whose, speaking of persons, are translated 89
 by *de qui*.

Duquel, desquels, } of which, with which,
de la quelle, desquelles, } from which
 are used for inanimate things and irrational creatures.

Dont may be used coming after a substantive in the course of a sentence for persons or things indifferently.

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

The man you speak of is dead.

L'homme { de qui } vous parlez est mort.
 { dont }

There is nothing in the world which God is not the author of.

Il n'y a rien dans le monde dont Dieu ne soit auteur.

90 *A qui*, to whom, is used for persons only :

Au quel, aux quels } to which,
 à la quelle, aux quelles }

are commonly used for irrational or inanimate beings ; but we sometimes make use of them in speaking of persons.

E X A M P L E S.

The merchant, to whom you recommended my brother, has failed.

Lé négociant { à qui } vous avez recommandé mon
 au quel }
frere a manqué.

The sciences which I apply myself to are useful.

Les sciences auxquelles je m'applique sont utiles.

91 We ought to observe in the above examples, that we do not use in French the English construction of bringing the particles *to* and *of* at the end of the sentence : therefore these words,

The book he speaks of,

The man I spoke to,

Must be thus construed in French,

The book of which he speaks,

The man to whom I spoke.

Le livre dont il parle.

L'homme à qui je parlai.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

The nations who inhabit hot countries are enervated by the climate and inclined to be slaves; but the people that live in the Frigid Zones have a natural courage which inclines them to liberty.

Ulysses, accompanied by Diomedes, carried away the paladium in which the Trojans had a particular confidence: it was a statue of Minerva which had been sent to them from heaven, and on which depended the fate of their city, and the success of their wars.

It is the north of Europe which produced those brave nations, that quitted their native soil, in order to destroy tyrants and slaves.

Despair puts an end to desires, fears and cares, which are the tyrants of life, and which always attend vain hopes.

As the sea, which seems willing to cover the earth, is stopped by the weeds and gravel that are on its banks; so those Monarchs, whose power appears boundless, are sometimes deterred from great undertakings by small difficulties which they did not foresee.

Henry the Great, of France, looked upon good education as a thing on which depends the happiness of mankind.

RULE IV.

The pronoun *quoi* being relative is used for all genders and numbers in speaking of inanimate things; the case in which it is most used is the dative. 92

EXAMPLE.

It is an objection they cannot answer.

C'est une objection { *à laquelle* } *ils ne peuvent*
 { *à quoi* } *répondre.*

When the dative of the relative pronoun speaking of inanimate things follows *ce* or *rien*, it must be absolutely rendered into French by *à quoi*. 93

EXAM-

E X A M P L E.

It is what I advise you to.

C'est à quoi je vous exhorte.

Is there nothing in which I can be of use to you?

N'y a-t'il rien à quoi je ne puisse vous être bon ?

- 94 The same pronoun is never used in the genitive, except after *ce*.

E X A M P L E.

It is what he complains of.

C'est de quoi il se plaint.

- 95 *Quoi* is very commonly used after such prepositions as govern the dative case.

E X A M P L E.

I was at the play, after which I went to the garden.

J'étois à la comédie, après quoi j'allai au jardin.

E X E R C I S E.

I am certain that it is what he aims at.

Tell me what you laugh at?

The principle on which they found their arguments is false.

Ariadne, daughter of Minos, gave a clew of thread to Theseus, by means of which he went out of the labyrinth, and returned conqueror of the Minotaur.

Stones and sticks were the arms with which the Britons defended themselves against the invasion of the Romans.

R U L E

R U L E V.

The pronoun *que*, though an accusative, may be 96
 used in familiar discourse, instead of *de qui*, or *à qui* ;
 it happens when it follows the impersonal verb *c'est*,
 accompanied by the genitive, or dative of a pronoun,
 or substantive.

E X A M P L E.

It was him I was speaking of.

C'est lui de qui je parlois.

C'est de lui que je parlois.

It is to the crown he aspired.

C'est à la couronne qu'il visoit.

E X E R C I S E.

It was to the Queen they applied to obtain his pardon.

It is you they are speaking of.

It is the general the nation complains of, and not the
 admiral.

It was by the foreign troops they were betrayed.

C H A P. XII.

Of Pronouns interrogative.

QUI is used when speaking of persons; *que* when 97
 speaking of things; and *qui* may be used not
 only in the nominative, but also in the genitive and
 dative.

G

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

What do you say ?

Que dites vous ?

Who says that ?

Qui dit cela ?

Who do you speak to ?

A qui parlez vous ?

E X E R C I S E.

Who will be security for the accomplishment of that promise ?

What would your brother do in a strange country without friends or money ?

What shall I do to prove my gratitude, for the kindness you have shewed towards me ?

R U L E I.

- 98 *Lequel, laquelle, &c.* are used speaking of persons or things ; they imply choice, and are always followed by a genitive expressed or understood.

E X A M P L E.

I have a coach and a chariot, which of the two will you have ?

J'ai un carrosse, et un carrosse coupé, lequel des deux voulez vous avoir ?

E X E R C I S E.

The eldest is of a dark complexion, the youngest is fair ; which would you prefer ?

Which

Which is preferable, a king who prefers the sweets of peace to the tumult of war, or a conqueror who breathes only death and carnage?

Which of the two governments is more advantageous to a nation; the monarchical or republican government?

Which of my two brothers do you love best?

R U L E II.

Quel, quelle, quels, quelles, are pronouns used in speaking of things or persons indifferently; they answer to the *what* of the English; they always precede their substantive, except when the substantive they are related to comes in the first member of the sentence.

E X A M P L E.

What coat will you put on to-day?

Quel habit voulez vous mettre aujourd'hui?

That is my opinion, what is yours?

Voila mon avis, quel est le votre?

E X E R C I S E.

What news is come by this day's packet? None interesting.

What has been always the cause of the decadence of the most flourishing empires? Riches and corruption amongst the people.

What Roman excited the people to expel the kings from Rome? Brutus.

What reason engaged him to do it? The death of Lucretia.

What was his reward? Freedom.

That is my brother's knife; which is yours?

R U L E III.

- 100 When the English pronoun *whose*, expresses a thing belonging to somebody, it must be translated into French by the dative *à qui*.

E X A M P L E.

Whose book is that?

A qui est ce livre là.

E X E R C I S E.

Whose horse is that at the door?

Whose servant is this?

Whose pictures are those?

1st. O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 101 In answer to such questions as are in the preceding rule, the English language requires the noun substantive in the genitive; but in French we put it in the dative.

E X A M P L E.

Whose horse is that? My brother's.

A qui est ce cheval là? A mon frere.

E X E R C I S E.

Whose house is that on the declivity of the hill? The duke of Leinster's.

Whose pen-knife is this? My master's.

Whose carriage was it with the white horses? The countess of B's.

2d O B S E R -

2d OBSERVATION.

In English, the answer is sometimes a pronoun 102 possessive; but it is more elegant to use in French, the dative of a pronoun personal of the same person.

EXAMPLE.

Whose shoes are those? *Mine.*

A qui sont ces souliers là? A moi.

Or,

Ce sont les miens.

EXERCISE.

Whose hat is this? Your's-

Whose nosegay is that, with beautiful roses? Her's-

Whose watch is this? his.

3d OBSERVATION.

The common idiom of the French language makes 103 us vary sometimes from the rules before mentioned; therefore great attention must be paid to the following common ways of speaking.

What do you say?

Que dites vous?

Qu'est ce que vous dites?

Qu'est ce que c'est que vous dites?

Who's there?

Qui est là?

Qui est ce qui est là?

What is the matter? is properly translated into 104 French by *qu'avez vous?* *qu'y a t'il?* or *qu'est ce que c'est?*

c'est? which last expression is also used to answer a question, as in this case.

I have a favour to beg of you?

What is it?

J'ai une grace à vous demander.

Qu'est ce que c'est?

EXERCISE.

Who lent him the money he wanted to extricate himself out of trouble?

Who teaches you French?

What will he do in that troublesome circumstance?

What did he write to his father?

- 105 N. B. The answer in English to those questions would be: *I did*; *he does*, &c. but in French we say; *moi, lui, &c.*

EXAMPLE.

Who sung yesterday after dinner? *I did.*

Qui chanta hier après dinner? Moi.

Who will come and walk? *He will.*

Qui viendra se promener? Lui.

Who borrowed your horses? *They did.*

Qui emprunta vos chevaux? Eux.

Will you dance a minuet? *I will.*

Voulez vous danser un menuet? Oui.

EXERCISE.

Who will play a game of picquet? *I will if you please.*

Did you send any money to your son? *I did.*

Who won yesterday at cards? *I did.*

Who lost? *She did.*

Will you apply better to your studies? *I will.*

Shall you write to your father? *I shall.*

CHAP.

C H A P. XIII.

*Of Pronouns indeterminate.**Quelque.*

QU E L Q U E, signifying *some* in English, ex- 106
presses an indeterminate object, or an indeter-
minate number of objects; it has *quelques* for the
plural, as:

Some sharper has imposed on him.

Quelque filou l'a attrapé.

Some people grow impertinent in prosperity.

*Quelques gens deviennent impertinens dans la prof-
périté.*

Sometimes it answers to the English expressions; 107
whatever, whatsoever, though, with ever so much, &c.
In those cases it comes before an adjective, and the
verb *etre* follows.

N. B. The verb *etre* must be in the conjunctive
mood preceded by *que*, and *quelque* being an adverb
then, has never a plural. We may observe also, that
if the nominative of the verb *etre* is not a pronoun
personal, it comes more elegantly after the verb.

E X A M P L E.

Let the fashions be ever so extravagant, a man of
sense ought to follow them.

Quelque

Quelque folles que soient les modes un homme d'esprit doit les suivre.

However great her riches may be.

Quelque grandes que soient ses richesses.

However prudent he may be.

Quelque prudent qu'il soit.

- 108 But before a noun attended with any other verb than *etre*, *quelque* agrees in number with the substantive, as

Whatever designs you may have.

Quelques desseins que vous ayez.

E X E R C I S E.

Some historians pretend that the coast of Africa was formerly joined to the land on which the city of Cadiz is situated.

However surprising it may appear, it is certain, that in the time of the Celtes, France was joined to England.

However secret your thoughts are, I can read them in your eyes.

However delicate Terence appears to us, he is still very far from the delicacy and beauty of Aristophanes.

Whatever services you do me, I shall be grateful for.

Whatever your motives may be, your conduct will be condemned.

Though men are ever so wicked, they dare not shew themselves openly enemies to virtue.

Personne

- 109 Signifies either no body or any body; in the first case it requires the particle *ne* before the verb.

E X A M P L E.

I saw no body.

Je n'ai vu personne.

Did

Did any body see you?

Personne vous a-t'il vu?

N. B. *Personne* always requires the adjective or **IIO** pronoun that relates to it in the masculine gender.

EXAMPLE.

I pity my sister, no body is so unfortunate as she is.

Je plains ma sœur, personne n'est si malheureux qu'elle.

EXERCISE.

Did you speak to any body since you arrived?

I do not know any body that I would oblige as soon as you.

Nobody believes it.

Personne

Coming after an exclusive preposition, does not require any negative before the verb.

EXAMPLE.

He died without being lamented by any body.

Il mourut sans être regretté de personne.

Tout.

Tout, toute, tous, toutes, all, every, whole, agrees in **III** gender and number with its substantive, and generally requires an article before that substantive when in the plural number.

EXAMPLE.

I walk every day.

Je me promene tous les jours.

EXERCISE.

I despise all your menaces, and much more your caresses.
When the trumpet sounded all the soldiers were ready.

Tout before a noun followed by *que*, expresses although, &c. it takes *tout* for the masculine plural, and for the feminine plural likewise that begins with a vowel.

EXAMPLE.

Although these adventures may appear surprising, they are true.

Tout étonnantes que ces avántures paroissent, elles sont vraies.

Brave as they are, they have been vanquished.

Tout braves qu'ils sont, ils ont été vaincus.

EXERCISE.

Though he passes for a great-wit, he takes often the wrong side of the question.

Happy as they were under that government, they preferred liberty to it.

Même

- 112 Is sometimes an adjective, and is translated in English by *same*, and answers to the Latin *idem*.

EXAM-

EXAMPLE.

The same man. *Le même homme.*

The same woman. *La même femme.*

Sometimes it signifies *self*, in Latin, *ipse*.

113

EXAMPLE.

The King himself commanded his armies.

Le roi lui même commandoit ses troupes.

It also signifies *even*, and in that case is indeclin-
able. 114

EXAMPLE.

In Switzerland, men, women and even children
took up arms for liberty.

*En Suisse, hommes, femmes, enfans même prirent les
armes pour la liberté.*

EXERCISE.

In several towns of Germany, Protestants and Catho-
licks have the same churches.

In a free state every kind of religion, even the Jewish,
ought to be tolerated.

I love her, even more than my sister.

Human nature is unhappy, to have every day the same
wants to satisfy.

Autre

115

Is sometimes an adjective, as

Un autre laquais : Another footman.

D'autres malheurs : Other misfortunes.

Sometimes it is not joined to any substantive, but
is preceded by the particle *en* to which it refers.

EXAM-

E X A M P L E.

He has another.

Il en a un autre.

And sometimes, but in cases different from those, it is a pronoun.

E X A M P L E.

Another would not have forgiven so easily as I did.

Un autre ne vous auroit pas pardonné si aisément que moi.

E X E R C I S E.

The ancients did not believe in the existence of another continent.

The temple of Solomon, having been destroyed, they built another by order of Cyrus.

We cannot be happy in this life and in the other world.

R U L E.

- 116 The word *different* may be elegantly translated into French by *autre* or *autres* for singular and plural.

E X A M P L E.

A traveller often relates things quite *different* from what they are.

Un voyageur rapporte souvent les choses tout autres qu'elles ne sont.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

He is now different from what he was in his youth.
His connections are quite different from what I should wish them to be.

R U L E II.

L'un et l'autre, one and the other, or both, signifies the union of many objects already mentioned; it has the two numbers and genders, and is declined with the definite article:

E X A M P L E.

Both dined with me yesterday.

L'un et l'autre dînèrent chez moi hier.

Sometimes the substantive follows, as

I can make use of both hands.

Je puis me servir de l'une et l'autre main.

E X E R C I S E.

They both agreed in the circumstances.

It was expected they should both unite against the common enemy.

I have fully answered both objections.

Both are in the right.

On,

The English expressions *one, they, we, men, people, &c.* are translated into French by the particle *on*, and the verb that follows is in the third person singular.

EXAMPLE.

They say.

Men talk.

People think.

*On dit.**On parle.**On pense.*

EXERCISE.

People laugh at other's misfortunes.

One may know his name by asking.

May any one ask you?

May one see the domains of Rathfarnham?

RULE.

- 119 *It* followed by the verb *etre* coming before the supine or participle of another verb, is translated into French by *on*, the verb *etre* is struck off, and the supine put in the same tense as *etre* was.

EXAMPLE.

It is said there was a battle.

On dit qu'il y a eu une bataille.

Shall it be said we have been vanquished.

Dira t'on que nous avons été vaincus.

EXERCISE.

It was reported on 'Change, this morning, that the two fleets had met.

It is proposed to grant to the king three hundred thousand pounds to defray the expences of the war.

It is doubted whether peace will be made or not.

RULE.

- 120 If the verb *etre* is preceded by a noun or pronoun, instead of the particle *it*, then we may use *on*, and strike

strike off the verb *etre*, as in the preceding rule, and the noun becomes the accusative of the verb.

E X A M P L E.

Great preparations are making for carrying on the war.

On fait de grandes préparations pour continuer la guerre.

The streets of Dublin will be paved in a short time.

On pavera les rues de Dublin dans peu de tems.

E X E R C I S E.

They say the letters have not been received, which were expected by the last mail.

Great news is daily expected from our fleet and army.

A fleet has been sent to watch the motions of the French in the Mediterranean Sea.

A reward shall be given to the informer.

It is expected war will be declared against Spain.

N. B. We use *l'on* instead of *on* in the following cases for sake of better sound.

1st. After all words ending with a vowel except an e mute, as

Here we live in a different manner.

Ici l'on vit tout autrement.

2dly, After *et* and *ou*, as

Can you tell me where stockings are sold?

Pouvez vous me dire ou l'on vend des bas?

3dly, Before verbs beginning with *com* or *con*, we use *que l'on* instead of *qu'on*, as

Let people reflect on the loss, and they will perceive the greatness of it.

Que l'on considere la perte et l'on en verra la grandeur.

C H A P. XIV.

Of the Particles *le, y, en.*

TH E use of these particles being very extensive, too much attention cannot be paid to the following rules, which, with the exercises, must fully elucidate the different circumstances in which they may be used.

R U L E I.

- 121 *Le* is translated into English by *it* or *so* ; it either expresses a noun or a whole sentence.

E X A M P L E.

You are happy, but he is not *so*.

Vous etes heureux, mais il ne l'est pas.

They said he failed, but I do not believe *it*.

On dit qu'il a manqué, mais je ne le crois pas.

- 122 N. B. *So* is commonly left out in the English sentence ; but whenever it could be placed in it with propriety, we must express *le* in French.

E X A M P L E.

He is rich, but I am not (*so*.)

Il est riche, mais je ne le suis pas.

N. B. 2dly,

N. B. 2dly, *Le* is indeclinable when it refers to a noun adjective, as,

She is unhappy and will always be so.

Elle est malheureuse et le sera toujours.

But when it refers to a substantive, it must take *la* 124 for the feminine, and *les* for the plural; and it becomes really, in that case, a kind of pronoun.

EXAMPLE.

She is not a countess yet, but she will be so in a short time.

Elle n'est pas encore comtesse, mais elle la sera dans peu de tems.

Are those your brothers? Yes, they are.

Sont ce là vos freres? Oui, ce les sont.

EXERCISE.

My mother was angry with me, and she is so still.

You are a scholar, but I am not so.

The people of England are jealous of their liberty, and they will always be so.

The merchants were alarmed at the bad success of affairs, but they will be much more so when this news is made public.

Is your father arrived? I believe so.

The Prussian troops are the best disciplined in Europe; why are they so?

My sister is not married, but I believe she soon will be.

RULE II.

The particle *y* relates to persons, places, and 125 things; it is rendered in English by *there, thither, within, in it, in them, about it, &c.* It follows the

imperative mood, but immediately precedes any other.

EXAMPLE.

Will you go *there* to-morrow?

Voulez vous y aller demain?

He used me ill, but I think no more *on it*.

Il a mal agi envers moi, mais je n'y pense plus.

Go *there* from me.

Allez y de ma part.

N. B. If the imperative be in a negative or interrogative sense, *y* precedes it.

EXERCISE.

When the ambassadors from the Samnites went to Curius, and endeavoured to bribe him by magnificent presents, the Roman paid no regard to them: He was at that time preparing some roots for his dinner, and pointing at them; see, said he, to the ambassadors, if I want your presents when I am satisfied with such a dinner.

Will you go to the play to night? Yes, and I will bring you there if I can get a place.

I will go to the castle? Will you come there with me?

That action is not honourable; I will never consent to it.

I have a mind to go to see my brother, but I fear he is not within.

RULE III.

- 126 We use in French, *il y a* for *there is* and *there are*, *y a t'il* for *is there*, and *are there*; and we must observe that the tense of the verb *avoir* follows in French that of *to be* in the English sentence, as, *il y avoit* there was; *il y aura* there shall be, &c.

EXAM-

EXAMPLE.

Should there be men wicked enough to spread such a report.

Y auroit il des gens assez méchans pour semer un pareil bruit.

EXERCISE.

There are many large rivers in America.

Is there any news by this day's packet? There is none of importance.

There were, in the capitol, geese consecrated to Jupiter, who by their noise warned the garrison of the approach of the enemy.

There will be great danger, but there is immortal glory to acquire.

RULE IV.

En, in the discourse relates to a thing or place; 127 it is expressed in English by *some, some of it, some of them, from it, of it, from thence, &c.* it precedes immediately the verb, except in case it should be in the imperative mood when it follows it.

EXAMPLE.

I have wine, will you have some?

J'ai du vin, en voulez vous?

Give me some, if you please.

Donnez m'en, s'il vous plait.

EXERCISE.

I bought lace for my sister, and my cousin asked me to give her some; so I was obliged to buy more of it to-day.

I know

I know a secret that concerns you; if you promise not to speak of it, I will tell it to you.

I was in France, but I returned from thence when war was declared.

In adversity we have no friends, though in prosperity we find always a great number of them.

You have fine books in your library, will you lend me one of them?

Give me one of them; I shall be much obliged to you.

N. B. If the imperative mood is in a negative sense, the particle *en* must precede the verb,

E X A M P L E.

Do not doubt it.

N'en doutez pas.

E X E R C I S E.

Do not give him any of them.

Do not bring any more of it.

Do not speak to him about it.

R U L E V.

- 128 The English idiom often requires the expressions *some, of it, of them, &c.* to be omitted; but whenever they could be introduced with some propriety, we must place *en* in the French sentence, as in the above rule.

E X A M P L E.

Has he got any horses? Yes, he has several (of them.)

A-t'il des chevaux? Oui, il en a plusieurs.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

Your brother killed many partridges yesterday ; did he send you any ?

How many brothers have you ? I have four, and you have five.

Here are fine apples : will you have any ?

A king has always flatterers around him ; but friends, he very seldom has any.

You have many horses, will you lend me two ?

RULE VI.

One or ones, either expressed or understood in an English sentence, when we speak of a thing mentioned before, is expressed in French by the particle *en*, used as before, (128.)

EXAMPLE.

Have you any horses ? Yes, three fine ones.

Avez vous des chevaux ? Oui, j'en ai trois beaux.

EXERCISE.

Patience is a great virtue, and it is a rare one.

If you want a carriage, I have a good one to sell.

CHAP.

C H A P. XV.

Of the Construction of French Negatives.

R U L E I.

130 **W**E have observed before (23,) that the English word *not*, is translated into French by *ne*, and *pas* or *point*; the first of which words precedes the verb, and either of the two last follows it. But when the verb is in the present tense of the infinitive mood, the two negatives *ne pas*, or *ne point*, are both placed before it.

E X A M P L E.

I esteem you too much, not to acquaint you with this report.

Je vous estime trop, pour ne pas vous informer de ce bruit.

E X E R C I S E.

He was resolved not to forsake his friend in distress.

I advise you not to go to the play to night; you would catch a cold.

In order not to be tiresome, I shall be concise.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

131 Though in familiar discourse we may use indifferently *pas* or *point*; yet the grammatical nicety points out a difference between those two words: *ne* joined to *point*,
has

has rather more force ; it implies a more absolute negative, therefore if any one asks this question :

Have you any money ?

Avez vous de l'argent ?

The answer

Je n'en ai point.

Will be more absolutely denying than this :

Je n'en ai pas.

It comes near to the English :

I have none at all.

R U L E II.

Point is used with more elegance than *pas* before 132 the article *de*, or at the end of a sentence.

E X A M P L E.

There is no glory to be acquired in such a war.

Il n'y a point de gloire à acquérir dans une telle guerre.

I esteem him, but I do not love him.

Je l'estime, mais je ne l'aime point.

E X E R C I S E.

I have no books in my library, that I have not read.

A man has no friends, who has no money.

They promise to succour us; but I do not believe them.

The enemies approached the walls, and the centry did not perceive them.

R U L E

R U L E I I I.

- 133 *Pas* is always used when the negation precedes any of the following words:

Beaucoup, much.

Peu, little.

Mieux, better.

Plus, more.

Moins, less.

Trop, too much.

Souvent, often.

Toujours, always.

Si, so.

Tant, so much.

Autant, as much.

Fort, } very.

Très, }

E X A M P L E.

He has not less prudence than his father ; but he has not such great abilities.

Il n'a pas moins de prudence que son pere : mais il n'a pas tant de talens.

E X E R C I S E.

It is not always proper to tell truth.

My brother is not always in town ; for he has a beautiful house in the country.

She is not very handsome, but she is a most agreeable young lady.

He is not older than my son.

She is not always in good temper.

R U L E I V.

- 134 *Not*, being in the middle of a sentence, followed by *that*, is translated into French, by *non pas* followed by *que* ; and the verb coming after must be in the conjunctive mood.

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

The Emperor made proposals to the King of Prussia, not *that* he was afraid of the dangers of war, but in order to prevent the effusion of blood.

L'Empereur fit des ouvertures au roi de Prusse; non pas qu'il craignît les dangers, de la guerre mais pour éviter de répandre le sang.

E X E R C I S E.

I advise you not to do it: not that I think it wrong in itself; but because it is improper in the present circumstance.

I will not go there; not that I have any dislike to him, but I have business to transact.

R U L E V.

In asking a question *point* is a mere interrogation, 135

as

N'avez vous point froid ?

Are you not cold ?

But *pas* insinuates a supposition of the thing asked,

as

N'avez vous pas froid.

For it denotes a supposition that the person spoken to is cold.

E X E R C I S E.

Was not Henry the Fourth the greatest King that ever sat on the throne of France ?

Is not your father gone to the country ?

Did you not write to him since his departure ?

Is he not one of the richest merchants in the city of Dublin ?

R U L E VI.

- 136 The following adverbs, which are negative by their nature, are placed in the French sentence in the place of *pas* or *point*; and *ne* precedes the verb as usual.

<i>Aucun</i>	{ none. not any.	<i>Guerres</i> , but little.
<i>Personne</i> , nobody.		<i>Jamais</i> , never.
<i>Nul</i> , none.		<i>Rien</i> , nothing.
<i>Nullement</i> , not at all.		

E X A M P L E.

We never had so good a king.
Nous n'eumes jamais un si bon roi.
 He has no friend.
Il n'a aucun ami.

N. B. To the above list we may add *ni* single or repeated, to express *neither* and *nor*.

E X A M P L E.

I sleep neither night nor day.
Je ne dors ni nuit ni jour.

E X E R C I S E.

Alexander never shewed himself so great, as by his behaviour towards the widow and daughters of the unfortunate Darius.

I did not speak to any body.

He has been at school a long time, and he knows nothing.

I play neither whist nor piquet.

I neither saw him nor his brother.

R U L E

R U L E VII.

The conjunctions *à moins que* unless, *de peur que* 137
left, *de crainte que* for fear, govern the single negative
ne before the verb following, which is always in the
conjunctive mood.

E X A M P L E.

He left a guard, lest he should be surprised.

Il laissa une garde de peur qu'il ne fût surpris.

E X E R C I S E.

I will not go, lest he should see me.

I will not dine with you unless you promise to sup with
me to-morrow.

Do not be too certain of the success, for fear you might
be disappointed.

R U L E VIII.

Why, being in a negative sentence, may be rendered 138
into French by *que*, and the following verb must be
preceded by *ne*.

E X A M P L E.

Why did he not come with you ?

Que n'est il venu avec vous ?

E X E R C I S E.

Why does not he go to walk ?

Why do not you speak to him ?

Why do not you answer ?

R U L E IX.

- 139 Any verb of fear, mentioning an event not wished for, will have the next verb in the conjunctive mood with the negative *ne* before it.

E X A M P L E.

I fear we shall lose the battle, as the enemy is superior to us in number.

Je crains que nous ne perdions la bataille, car l'ennemi nous surpasse de beaucoup en nombre.

E X E R C I S E.

I fear we shall have a severe winter, as we had so fine a summer.

Do not be so intimate with him : I fear he will bring some misfortune on you.

He was afraid I should acquaint his father with his idleness ; but I promised to wait for some time.

R U L E X.

- 140 *But* coming in the course of the English sentence, so that it does not divide the sense of it, is translated in French by *que*, and the verb that precedes it takes the negative *ne* before it.

E X A M P L E.

I ask but three guineas a week.

Je ne demande que trois guinées par semaine.

- 141 N. B. If *but* is immediately followed by a verb, we translate it as before, and we put that verb in the infinitive mood.

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

He did nothing but laugh.

Il ne fit que rire.

She does nothing but crying.

Elle ne fait que pleurer.

N. B. 2dly, the word *only* may be translated into French by *que* with the negative before the verb as in the rule (140). 142

E X A M P L E.

I asked only two guineas a month.

Je ne demandai que deux guinées par mois.

E X E R C I S E.

Novels are the most pernicious of all books, fit only to spoil the manners, and corrupt the mind.

Tea-tables are commonly nothing but schools of scandal.

He has but one word.

Girls of fifteen are inclined to nothing but dancing, laughing and singing.

If you have only a small income, you should live in proportion.

I shall only stay three days.

He only waits for a fair wind, and he shall fail immediately.

R U L E XI.

The verbs *oser* to dare, *cesser* to cease, *pouvoir* to be able, *savoir* to know, being used negatively in the course of a sentence, we do not use *pas* after them. 143

E X A M P L E.

I do not know if it is true or not.

Je ne sais si cela est vrai ou non.

But if those verbs are used negatively by themselves, or in the course of a sentence interrogatively, we place *pas* or *point* after them.

E X A M P L E.

I do not know.

Je ne sais pas.

Could you not oblige me?

Ne pourriez vous pas m'obliger?

R U L E XII.

- 144 When the impersonal verb *il y a* is followed by the compound tense of a verb, we place *ne* before the auxiliary.

E X A M P L E.

It is an age since I have seen you.

Il y a un siecle que je ne vous ai vu.

E X E R C I S E.

It is three months since he wrote to me.

I have not been at Paris these four years.

I have not received any money these six months.

R U L E XIII.

- 145 When the particle *de* comes after a verb in a negative sense, *pas* or *point* are left out.

E X A M-

EXAMPLE.

I will not write to him these two years.

Je ne lui écrirai de deux ans.

EXERCISE.

I shall not go to the country these five weeks.

I will not speak to her as long as I live.

My brother is in the East-Indies; he will not return these three years.

RULE XIV.

Ne being followed by the conjunctive mood, and preceded by *qui* or *que*, will not have a second negative after the verb. 146

EXAMPLE.

Is there any one who does not know it?

Y a-t'il quelqu'un qui ne le sache?

EXERCISE.

Did you ever see any body that does not dread the hour of his dissolution?

Is there any traveller that does not enlarge by much on what he has seen?

He has no daughter but what is young and handsome.

I will not give you any book to read but what is fit for a young person.

C H A P. XVI.

On the degrees of Comparison.

R U L E I.

- 147 **W**HEN a verb follows *plus, moins* without a preposition, and not in the infinitive mood, it must take *ne* before it.

E X A M P L E.

He is taller than I thought.

Il est plus grand que je ne pensois.

- 148 But if the verb is in the infinitive mood, or if it is in any tense with a preposition before it, *ne* is omitted.

E X A M P L E.

Is she more sprightly than when I saw her last year?

Est elle plus enjouée que quand je la vis l'année passée?

E X E R C I S E.

A gentleman in France, who has no more than one hundred pounds a year, may live with splendor.

He spent more than he had in less than two years, and was reduced to the greatest poverty.

Your brother had more success than he deserved.

Our troops behaved in the action with more courage than was expected.

R U L E

R U L E II.

If the superlative degree is followed by a verb preceded by any case of the relative pronoun *qui*, that verb must be in the conjunctive mood.

E X A M P L E.

He is the politest man I know.

Il est l'homme le plus poli que je connoisse.

It is the best pen I ever used.

C'est la meilleure plume dont je me sois jamais servi.

E X E R C I S E.

They are the bravest soldiers he has in his army.

Nero was the greatest tyrant that ever disgraced the name of man.

Cook, an English captain, is the latest navigator who made discoveries in the pacific ocean.

New Zealand is the largest Island that has been discovered by that celebrated officer.

He found at Otaheite the finest women that can be seen.

R U L E III.

The English expressions, *the more, the less*, are rendered into French by *plus* and *moins*.

E X A M P L E.

The more he drinks, the dryer he is.

Plus il boit, plus il a soif.

E X E R-

E X E R C I S E.

The more an ambitious man obtains, the more he wishes to get.

The more I speak to him, the less he does.

R U L E IV.

- 151 When there is in a sentence, *as* repeated twice, the first must be expressed in French by *si* or *aussi*; and the second by *que*.

E X A M P L E.

I wish to God I was as happy as my brother.

Plut à Dieu que je fusse aussi heureux que mon frere.

- 152 N. B. Though I say in this rule, that the first *as* is to be expressed by *si* or *aussi*, yet there is a difference to be observed; for *si* is used in a negative sense, and *aussi* in the affirmative.

E X A M P L E.

Nothing is so dreadful as a civil war.

Rien n'est si terrible qu'une guerre civile.

War is as dreadful, as peace is sweet.

La guerre est aussi terrible que la paix est douce.

E X E R C I S E.

Cicero was as eloquent as Demosthenes, and he had more solidity in his arguments.

He is as tall as your son, though your son is older than him.

The French language is as difficult to learn to an Englishman, as the English to a Frenchman.

Your

Your pictures are not as good as mine.
He is as strong as you.

R U L E V.

The preposition *by* being joined to the compara- 153
tive, to express a quantity, is rendered into French
by *de*.

E X A M P L E.

You are taller by three inches.
Vous etes plus grand de trois pouces.

E X E R C I S E.

He is shorter by a whole head.
That spire is higher by one hundred yards.
He is richer by one hundred pounds.

R U L E VI.

When in English, the verbs *to have* or *to be*, pre- 154
cede the comparative, sometimes there is a repetition
of the same verbs after the conjunction *than*; but
we seldom repeat them in French.

E X A M P L E.

He is richer than you are.
Il est plus riche que vous.
Il est plus riche que vous n'etes.

E X E R C I S E.

If he was as industrious as I am, he would not spend his
time in those amusements.

If

If I had as good a fortune as you have, I would make a better use of it.

Cæsar was as brave as Alexander, and he was more virtuous.

If I had been as attentive as you, I would have made as great a proficiency.

R U L E VII.

- 155 *As much, as many*, are rendered into French by *autant* ; *so much, so many*, by *tant* ; and if, *as follows* in the same sentence, it is translated by *que*.

N. B. *Tant* and *autant* require the particle *de*, before the next noun.

E X A M P L E.

I have not so many books as you, but they are better.

Je n'ai pas tant de livres que vous, mais ils sont meilleurs.

E X E R C I S E.

A liar is as much despised, as a man of veracity is esteemed.

There are as many souls in the empire of China, as in all Europe besides.

C H A P. XVII.

Of the Particles de, à, pour, before the infinitive.

THE particle *to*, the only mark of the present tense of the infinitive mood in the English language, is sometimes intirely left out in French, and sometimes translated by either of the three particles *de, à, pour*; which is proper to do in the different circumstances of the discourse, is extremely difficult to a learner to understand and much more to the professor to explain; it is therefore strongly recommended to pay extreme attention to the following rules.

First General RULE.

De is to be placed before the French infinitive mood, when *to* in English may be changed into any of the prepositions *of, from, with, by*; and the present of the infinitive, into the participle. 156

E X A M P L E.

1st. he hindered me to work.

He hindered me *from working*.

Il m'empêcha de travailler.

2dly, I had the honor to dine with him.

I had the honor *of dining* with him.

J'ai eu l'honneur de dîner avec lui.

3dly, You upbraid me to love you.

You upbraid me *with loving* you.

Vous me reprochez de vous aimer.

Second General RULE.

- 157 When the participle preceded by the prepositions *in* or *for* may be used in English instead of the present tense of the infinitive mood, in that case the preposition *à* must precede the infinitive in French.

EXAMPLE.

1st. He delights to do good.

He delights *in doing* good.

Il se plaît à faire du bien.

2dly, That wine is fit to drink.

That wine is fit *for drinking*.

Ce vin est bon à boire.

Third General RULE.

- 158 The preposition *pour* must precede the infinitive in French, when the particle *to* coming before the infinitive in English, may as well be rendered by *for to*, *in order to*, with the infinitive mood, or *to the end that*, or *that*, with the conjunctive or indicative; or by *for* with the participle; in short when it denotes the design, end, or reason of doing something.

EXAMPLE

1st. I wrote to acquaint him with the news.

I wrote. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{for} \\ \text{in order} \\ \text{with a design} \end{array} \right\} \text{to acquaint him, \&c.}$

I wrote

I wrote $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in order that} \\ \text{to the end that} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right\}$ I might acquaint, &c.

J'écrivis pour lui apprendre cette nouvelle.

Such are the three general rules which can give an idea of the use of these prepositions; but however they are not sufficient, as the English particle *to* does not always precede the infinitive; but a perusal of the following rules will entirely elucidate the difficulty.

ARTICLE I.

Of the Preposition de.

The following verbs govern the preposition *de* before the infinitive that follows them in the same sentence. 159

N. B. The verbs, marked in this list with an asterisk, being followed by a noun substantive require that noun in the genitive case.

* *Abuser*, to abuse.

Acbever, to finish.

Affecter, to affect.

* *S'affliger*, to afflict.

* *S'abstenir*, to abstain.

* *S'appercevoir*, to perceive.

* *S'avisier*, to think of.

Arrêter, to decree.

* *Avertir*, to warn.

* *Blamer*, to blame.

Craindre, to fear.

Cesser, to cease, leave off.

Conjurer, to intreat.

* *Charger*, to charge.

Commander, to command.

Se consoler, comfort one's self.

Choisir, to choose.

* *Convenir*, to agree.

Conseiller, to advise.

* *Détourner*, to deter.

Deffendre, to forbid.

Se dépêcher, to make haste.

* *Se deshabituer*, to leave off.

* *Se défier*, to mistrust.

- Décharger*, to discharge.
Délibérer, to deliberate.
Déterminer, to determine.
 * *Désespérer*, to despair.
 * *Dégouter*, to disgust.
Différer, to delay, put off.
Dire, to say, tell.
 * *Dispenser*, to dispense.
Demander, to beg.
 * *Se desister*, to desist.
Empêcher, to hinder.
Enjoindre, to enjoin.
Ecrire, to write.
Effrayer, to frighten.
S'empresse, to hasten one's self.
S'emparer, to take hold.
 * *S'ennuyer*, to grow tired.
 * *Exempter*, to exempt.
Excuser, to excuse.
Entreprendre, to undertake.
Essayer, to try.
Exiger, to require.
 * *S'étonner*, to wonder.
Enrager, to be mad at.
Feindre, to feign, dissemble.
Finir, to finish.
 * *Se flatter*, to flatter one's self.
 * *Se garder*, to take care.
Hésiter, to hesitate.
Hair, to hate.
Se hâter, to hasten one's self.
Inspirer, to inspire.
 * *S'informer*, to enquire.
 * *S'inquiéter*, to fret.
 * *S'impatience*, to lose patience.
 * *S'indigner*, to be provoked.
Jurer, to swear.
 * *Justifier*, to justify.
 * *Jouir*, to enjoy.
Juger à propos, to think proper.
Louer, to command.
 * *Se lasser*, to grow tired.
Mander, to write.
Méditer, to meditate.
 * *Mériter*, to deserve.
Médire, to slander.
Ménacer, to threaten.
 * *Se Mêler*, to meddle.
 * *Se Moquer*, to laugh at.
Négliger, to neglect.
Offrir, to offer.
Oublier, to forget.
Ordonner, to order.
Pardonner, to forgive.
Permettre, to allow.
Persuader, to persuade.
 * *Parler*, to speak.
 * *Profit*, to improve, profit.
 * *Plaindre*, to pity.
Prier, to pray, desire, beg.
Presser, to urge.
Presumer, to presume.
Promettre, to promise.
Professer, to profess.
Proposer, to propose.
 * *Se plaindre*, to complain.
Se piquer { to pretend
D'une chose { to do a thing
Retenir, to keep from.
Réprimander, to reprimand.
Résoudre, to resolve.
Recommander, to recommend.
Redouter, to dread.
 * *Se réjouir*, to rejoice.

* <i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.	<i>Suffire</i> , to suffice.
* <i>Se ressouvenir</i> , to remember.	<i>Suggerer</i> , to suggest.
<i>Refuser</i> , to refuse.	<i>Se scandaliser</i> , to take offence.
<i>Remercier</i> , to thank.	<i>Supplier</i> , to beg.
<i>Reprocher</i> , to reproach.	<i>S'efforcer</i> , to endeavour.
* <i>Se soucier</i> , to care for.	<i>Tacher</i> , to strive.
* <i>Se saisir</i> , to seize.	* <i>Se vanter</i> , to boast.
<i>Sommer</i> , to summon.	* <i>Se servir</i> , to make use.
<i>Soutenir</i> , to suspect.	

EXAMPLE.

Never propose to do an unjust thing.
Ne proposez jamais de faire une chose injuste.

EXERCISE.

I proposed to lend him money on good security, but he refused to listen to my proposals.

I told him to take care and not to presume to do a rash thing.

I fear to displease him, if I give him that counsel.

Permit me to speak to him.

In every empire since the creation of the world, when the people ceased to love virtue, destruction soon followed.

When the ambassador had finished his discourse, the king ordered him to withdraw, and assembled his council in order to deliberate on that important affair.

RULE I.

The English expression *to have just*, or *to be just*, 160 is commonly rendered into French by the verb *venir*, or *ne faire que*, and the next verb being in the infinitive mood, must be preceded by the particle *de*.

N. B. It must be observed that, in this case, the verb *venir* or *faire*, must be in the same tense and

person in French, as *to have*, or *to be*, were in English.

E X A M P L E.

I had just done writing when he came in.

Je venois d'écrire, quand il entra.

Je ne faisois que d'écrire, quand il entra.

E X E R C I S E.

I was just arrived in France, when war was declared.

They were just returning from the East Indies.

I had just received a letter from my brother.

You were just born, when your father died.

We were just beginning to make a great fortune, when this accident overturned all our hopes.

R U L E II.

- 161 Sometimes the English participle follows a verb ; in that case we do not use the participle in French, but the infinitive mood preceded by the particle *de*.

E X A M P L E.

When you have done speaking, I shall begin.

Quand vous aurez fini de parler, je commencerai.

E X E R C I S E.

I intend going there to-morrow, if we have fine weather.

He could not help reproaching her, for her ingratitude.

He cannot forbear gaming, although I told him several times it would be his ruin.

He will repent having done that wicked action.

R U L E

The verb *avoir*, being followed by any of the following substantives, require the particle *de* before the next infinitive.

Avoir {	<i>Affaire,</i>	{ to have	Occasion.
	<i>besoin,</i>		need.
	<i>congé,</i>		leave.
	<i>coutume,</i>		custom.
	<i>dessein,</i>		a design.
	<i>droit,</i>		a right.
	<i>envie,</i>		a mind.
	<i>lieu,</i>		room.
	<i>occasion,</i>		opportunity.
	<i>permission,</i>		leave.
	<i>tems,</i>		time.
{	<i>soin,</i>	{	care.

I have a mind to go to the play.

J'ai envie d'aller à la comédie.

You have now a fine opportunity to serve me.
I had a mind to advise my brother not to be so intimate
with him ; but I feared to displease him.

My mother will not give me leave to go to the garden to night, but I hope I shall go on Wednesday next with your sister.

Come, it is time to get up, we have a great deal of business this morning.

I have not time to play, for I have a long lesson and a French exercise.

I believe

I believe you have a mind to play ; but I will not give you leave to go out until you have finished your exercise, and learned your lesson.

They had reason to suspect your sincerity, as you refused to help them at the time of their distress.

R U L E IV.

- 163 The English expressions, *to be in the right, to be in the wrong*, are translated in French by *avoir raison, avoir tort* ; so that the verb *avoir* must be in the same tense and person, as the verb *to be* is in English, and the next infinitive is preceded by the particle *de*.

E X A M P L E.

You are in the right to prefer the accomplishments of the mind to those of the body.

Vous avez raison de préférer les perfections de l'esprit à celles du corps.

E X E R C I S E.

He is in the right to apply himself to geometry, for it opens the mind and prepares it for the study of many useful and curious sciences.

I was in the wrong not to follow my father's wise counsels, and he was in the right to tell me that my carelessness would be a real cause of sorrow and repentance for the remainder of my life.

R U L E V.

- 164 The verb *être*, being followed by any of the adjectives hereafter mentioned, governs the particle *de* before the next infinitive.

Aise,

Aise, glad.

Affuré, assured.

Avide, covetous.

Capable, capable.

Curieux, curious.

Content, contented, pleased.

Digne, worthy.

Ennuyé, weary.

Faché, sorry.

Joyeux, joyful.

Incapable, incapable.

Incertain, uncertain.

Indigne, unworthy.

Fatigué, } tired.

Las,

Mécontent, discontent.

Ravi, overjoyed.

Satisfait, satisfied.

Sur, certain.

Etre à la veille, to be on the brink.

Etre en état, to be in a state, condition.

Etre sur le point, to be near,

165

Require also the particle *de* before the next infinitive.

EXAMPLE.

I shall be very glad to see you, if you come to town; and I have been sorry to hear you were in our neighbourhood and did not come to see me.

Je serai fort aise de vous voir si vous venez en ville; et j'ai été fâché d'apprendre que vous avez été dans notre voisinage sans venir me voir.

EXER-

E X E R C I S E.

Whoever is capable of betraying a friend, or forsaking him in distress, is unworthy to be placed in the rank of men.

Many people say, I should be glad to know the French language, I should be overjoyed to speak it well ; but they are soon tired of applying themselves to that useful study.

He was upon the brink of being ruined by his carelessness in the management of his affairs.

Alexander the Great, being curious to see Diogenes, went to a place where he found that famous Cynic in a cask ; having placed himself between the Sun and him, the Philosopher told him ; thou art powerful, O Alexander ! but thou art not able to give me that light which thou takest from me at present.

I am incapable of saying one thing and thinking another.

R U L E VI.

- 166 If a noun substantive, preceded by the indefinite article *un, une*, follows a tense of the impersonal verb *c'est* it is, the infinitive that follows must be preceded by the particle *de*.

E X A M P L E.

It is a great satisfaction to a father, to see his son advance in the paths of virtue.

C'est une grande satisfaction à un père de voir son fils avancer dans le sentier de la vertu.

E X E R C I S E.

It is a pleasure for a good citizen, to spill his blood for the good of his country.

It would be a great satisfaction to me, to see you make some progress in your studies.

It

It is a great torment to a dying king, to have to reproach himself with not having done all the good actions that were in his power.

R U L E VII.

The impersonal verb *il est* in any of its tenses, 167 being followed by an adjective, governs the particle *de* before the next infinitive.

E X A M P L E.

It is lucky to have so well succeeded.
Il est heureux d'avoir si bien réussi.

E X E R C I S E.

When you wrote that letter, it was proper to do it, but as circumstances have changed, it is necessary to alter your stile.

It is dangerous in Dublin to walk the streets after eleven o'clock at night.

It is grievous to be reduced to poverty by the treachery of a false friend.

It is shameful to be in bed so late.

It will be pleasing to go to Leixlip to-morrow, if the day be fine.

R U L E VIII.

An adverb of comparison, as *plus*, more; *moins*, 168 less; *mieux*, better, &c. being followed by an infinitive, govern the particle *de* before it.

E X A M P L E.

Walk softly, rather than run thus.

Marchez doucement, plutôt que de courir ainsi.

E X E R -

EXERCISE.

A true friend of his country should lose his life, rather than to betray the trust of those who have chosen him.

Nothing pleases me so much as playing a game at whist with my friends.

I hate nothing more than to be obliged to have recourse to a lawyer or a physician.

What can give more satisfaction to the mind, than to enjoy the esteem of honest men?

ARTICLE II.

Of the Preposition à.

169 The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the infinitive that follows them.

Those marked with an asterisk govern the dative case of the noun that follows them.

<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Chercher</i> , to seek.
<i>Admettre</i> , to admit.	<i>Condamner</i> , to condemn.
* <i>Adhérer</i> , to adhere.	<i>Contribuer</i> , to contribute.
* <i>Applaudir</i> , to applaud.	<i>Condescendre</i> , to condescend.
* <i>Aider</i> , to help.	<i>Donner</i> , to give.
<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Disposer</i> , to prepare one self.
<i>Assigner</i> , to summon.	<i>Dresser</i> , to train up.
<i>Autoriser</i> , to empower.	* <i>Désobéir</i> , to disobey.
* <i>S'adonner</i> , to give one self.	* <i>Déplaire</i> , to displease.
* <i>S'appliquer</i> , to apply.	<i>Destiner</i> , to design for.
* <i>S'accoutumer</i> , to accustom.	* <i>Se disposer</i> , to prepare one self.
* <i>S'attendre</i> , to expect.	* <i>Se déterminer</i> , to determine.
* <i>S'appréter</i> , to prepare one self.	<i>Enseigner</i> , to teach.
<i>Consister</i> , to consist.	<i>Employer</i> , to employ.
	<i>Encourager</i> , to encourage.
	<i>Engager</i> ,

<i>Engager</i> , to engage.	<i>Montrer</i> , to shew.
<i>S'engager</i> , to take upon one self to.	* <i>Présenter</i> , to present.
<i>Enhardir</i> , to embolden.	* <i>Plaire</i> , to please.
<i>Exercer</i> , to exercise.	* <i>Pardonner</i> , to forgive.
<i>Exhorter</i> , to exhort.	<i>Parvenir</i> , to arrive.
<i>S'endurcir</i> , to inure one self to.	<i>Persister</i> , to persist.
* <i>Se fier</i> , to trust.	<i>Penser</i> , to think.
* <i>S'exposer</i> , to expose one self.	* <i>Pourvoir</i> , to provide.
* <i>S'habituer</i> , to use one self.	<i>Procéder</i> , to proceed.
* <i>Habituer</i> , to accustom.	* <i>Prétendre</i> , to aim at.
<i>Incliner</i> , to incline.	<i>Se préparer</i> , to prepare one self.
<i>Inciter</i> , to excite.	<i>Renoncer</i> , to give over.
* <i>Nuire</i> , to hurt.	<i>Se résoudre</i> , to resolve upon.
* <i>Obeir</i> , to obey.	* <i>Resssembler</i> , to be like.
* <i>S'occuper</i> , to employ one self.	<i>Résister</i> , to resist.
* <i>S'obstiner</i> , to be resolved.	* <i>Renoncer</i> , to renounce.
* <i>Se mettre</i> , to go to set about.	* <i>Survivre</i> , to outlive.
* <i>S'opposer</i> , to oppose.	<i>Tendre</i> , to aim.
<i>Perdre</i> , to lose.	* <i>Travailler</i> , to work.
<i>Porter quelqu'un à</i> , to induce some body to.	<i>Tarder</i> , to delay.
	<i>Enseigner</i> , to teach.

N. B. The participle preceded by *in*, following 170 those verbs, must be rendered by the infinitive, with the preposition *à*.

EXAMPLE.

If you please your father by your attention to your studies, you will engage him to reward you.

Si vous plaisez à votre pere par votre attention à vos études, vous l'engagerez à vous récompenser.

EXERCISE.

I have to read my lesson, but you have nothing to do.

I hope that misfortune will contribute to reclaim you from your bad course of life.

L

She

She learns to write, but she has a bad master who does not apply himself to the improvement of his pupils.

He was brought before his judges, the witnesses appeared, he had nothing to say in his defence, and he was condemned to lose his life.

Though he has offended me many times, I cannot resolve to withdraw my friendship; but I shall always help him to transact his business with propriety.

If you accustom yourself during your youth to practise virtue, it will be so familiar to you, that you will delight in doing good.

The Trojans, having brought the fatal horse into the center of the city, passed the remainder of the day, and part of the night in eating and drinking, until they were overpowered by sleep.

The antient Persians, from the age of five years to twenty, instructed their sons in three things, to manage a horse, to make use of the bow, and to speak truth.

According to the system of Newton, the light employs seven or eight minutes to come from the sun to the earth, that is to say, to cross a distance of near thirty millions of leagues.

A young lady ought to employ her time in acquiring the accomplishments necessary to the improvement of her mind.

R U L E I.

- 171 The verb impersonal *c'est* requires the particle *à* before the infinitive that follows it; and the verb *être* is then used in the sense of *to be ones turn, business and duty*.

E X A M P L E.

It is to the general to command, and to the soldiers to obey.

C'est au général à commander, et aux soldats à obéir.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

It is to you to drink, and to my brother to sing.
 It is to her mother to give her good advice, and to the
 daughter to follow her mother's good council.
 It was to me to go yesterday, but I was very ill.
 It is to you to go to church next Sunday.

RULE II.

Sometimes the verb *venir* signifies to begin, or to
 set about something; in that case it governs the par-
 ticle *à* before the infinitive that comes after it.

EXAMPLE.

When I *began* to speak.

Quand je vins à parler.

EXERCISE.

If it begins to rain, I shall be in great distress; for I
 have forgot my umbrella.

RULE III.

The verb *avoir* used impersonally, requires the
 preposition *à* before the next infinitive.

EXAMPLE.

There is great pleasure in doing good.

Il y a beaucoup de plaisir à faire du bien.

E X E R C I S E.

There is great reward to be expected in the other world,
for those who tread the paths of virtue.

There is much to say on the conduct of the wicked,
but nothing against the conduct of honest people.

There is great improvement to be expected from a complete knowledge of history.

R U L E IV.

- 174 When the verb *prier* means in English to give an invitation, it requires the particle *à* before the next infinitive.

E X A M P L E.

He asked me to dine with him.

Il m'a prié à diner avec lui.

E X E R C I S E.

I have asked Miss B. to drink tea with me this afternoon;
will you be one of the party?

He was asked to dine, but he did not come.

She asked me to come to a concert that she is to have
this evening.

R U L E V.

- 175 Most adjectives that are not mentioned (No. 164) require the particle *à* before the infinitive that follows them.

E X A M P L E.

Our Queen is the best of women, *prone* to hear the
tale of distress, *ready* to grant it a generous relief,
and

and inclined to heap favours on all those whom she thinks worthy of them.

Notre reine est la meilleure des femmes, penchée à écouter les plaintes des malheureux, portée à leur accorder un généreux secours, et encline à combler de faveurs ceux qu'elle en juge dignes.

EXERCISE.

The reign of Richard the third is dreadful to read; inclined to all kind of vices, he was always ready to commit any crime to satisfy them, and eager to spill the dearest blood in order to arrive at his ends.

A man who wishes to support his credit, should be exact in fulfilling his promises.

A boy who is inclined to learn well, is always ready to receive with attention his master's instructions, diligent to learn his lessons, and careful to come every day to school.

I am ready to serve you in any thing that lies in my power.

He is always assiduous to do his duty.

We are too apt to speak ill of our neighbours.

RULE VI.

The English participle being preceded by the particle *in*, is generally rendered in French by the infinitive mood, preceded by the particle *à*.

EXAMPLE.

They are busy *in writing* and *studying*; do not interrupt them.

Ils sont occupés à écrire et étudier; ne les interrompez pas.

E X E R C I S E.

I shall persist in doing you all the good offices that I can, if you comply with my desires.

Your brother spends his time as a country squire, in hunting and fishing.

The Trojans having brought the fatal horse into their city, passed the remainder of the day and a part of the night in drinking and dancing, until they were overpowered by sleep; the Greeks immediately came out of the horse's belly, kindled a fire to give a signal to the army that was anxious in waiting for the event; they entered at the breach that had been made in the wall, and dispersed themselves through all the city, which they laid in ashes.

We complain of the shortness of time, says Seneca, and yet we spend the greatest part of our lives either in doing nothing, or in acting amiss.

A R T I C L E III.

Of Verbs governing sometimes de, and sometimes à, before the next Infinitive.

R U L E I.

- 177 *Obliger*, in the sense of to force, to excite, to engage, is followed by the preposition *à* before the next infinitive: as,

He obliged me to give it.

Il m'a obligé à le donner.

- 178 But being used passively, it takes the preposition *de*: as,

I was obliged to give it.

Je fus obligé de le donner.

E X E R-

E X E R C I S E.

You will force me to abandon you, if you do not follow my advice.

If you oblige me to speak, I shall say things that you will not be glad to hear.

I was obliged to speak to my brother, on the behaviour of his son.

They were forced to burn their own ship, in order to prevent her from falling into the hands of the enemy.

R U L E II.

When the verb *tâcher* signifies to aim at, it requires the preposition *à* before the next infinitive: as, 179

He aims at making a fortune.

Il tâche à faire sa fortune.

But in another case it requires the preposition *de*. 180

I will endeavour to please you.

Je tâcherai de vous plaire.

E X E R C I S E.

They aimed to hurt me, but their endeavours have been unsuccessful.

I shall strive to be perfect in this study, before the beginning of the winter.

He aimed to acquire a good character, and he has succeeded.

R U L E III.

The verb *manquer* being joined to a negation, 181 governs the particle *de* before the next infinitive: as,

I will not fail to write.

Je ne manquerai pas d'écrire.

Also,

- 182 Also, when it signifies to be near, to have like: as,

He was like to lose his suit.

Il a manqué de perdre son procès.

- 183 But when it signifies, not to do what one ought, it must be followed by the particle *à*: as,

You have forgot to do what I ordered.

Vous avez manqué à faire ce que j'avois ordonné.

EXERCISE.

Do not fail to write as soon as you arrive.

My brother was near being killed in that battle.

If you fail to ask pardon of your father, he will never forgive you.

RULE IV.

- 184 *Contraîndre*, to constrain.

Discontinuer, to discontinue.

Commencer, to begin.

Essayer, to try.

Continuer, to continue.

Forcer, to compel.

Couter, to cost.

govern indifferently *de* or *à*, before the infinitive that follows them.

EXAMPLE.

If you continue to be good, every body will love you.

*Si vous continuez { d'être bon } tout le monde vous
 { à être bon } aimera.*

EXERCISE.

It costs less to follow the paths of virtue, than to run thus in the career of vice.

I dis-

I discontinued to give him my advice, when I saw that he would not follow it.

When a people begins to be corrupted by luxury and effeminacy, ruin and destruction follow in a short time.

ARTICLE IV.

Of the Preposition pour before the Infinitive.

We have observed before (158) that this prepo-¹⁸⁵ sition is to be used before the present of the infinitive, when it shews the cause or reason for which something is done.

EXAMPLE.

She did it to oblige you.

Elle le fit pour vous obliger.

EXERCISE.

Merit is not sufficient to succeed in the world without protectors.

He is very powerful, but I fear he has not interest enough to obtain a post of that importance.

The Greeks sent Ulysses to Philoctetes to bring him to the siege of Troy, where he was cured of his wounds by the son of Esculapius.

Palamedes invented the game of chess, at the siege of Troy, as well to serve for a diversion, as to teach the soldiers the stratagems of war.

Telemachus having left Mentor with Idomeneus, to teach him the true maxims of government, set off with the allied kings to go to declare war against Adrastus king of the Daunians.

To be a great man, one must know how to improve good fortune.

I am sorry I was not at home yesterday to receive you.

RULE

R U L E I.

- 186 The infinitive, coming after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and any Tense of the verb *suffire*, or the adverb *rien*, must be preceded by the preposition *pour*.

E X A M P L E.

She is *too* idle to make any progress.

— *Elle est trop paresseuse pour faire des progrès.*

Merit is not sufficient to thrive.

Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir.

E X E R C I S E.

Virtue is sufficient to make a man happy.

You understand the world too well to be guilty of any rudeness.

Rich people in general, are too much engaged with pleasure, to lend an ear to the cries of distress.

I bought a hoghead of Port wine, but it is not old enough to be drank yet.

A small fortune and a quiet life, are sufficient to make a reasonable man happy; but all the riches of the earth would not suffice to satisfy an ambitious man.

- 187 N. B. *Trop* and *assez* are sometimes followed by an infinitive without any preposition: as,

It is trifling enough.

C'est assez badiner.

This is to insult me too much.

C'est trop m'insulter.

R U L E

R U L E II.

The English participle being followed by the particle *pour*, is sometimes translated into French by the present of the infinitive, preceded by the particle *pour*.

E X A M P L E.

He has been blamed for having written that letter.

Il a été blâmé pour avoir écrit cette lettre.

E X E R C I S E.

He is commendable for doing a good action.
Children ought to be corrected for telling lies.

E X E R C I S E.

On the particles de, à, pour, mixed promiscuously.

A handsome woman has more to do than we think; nothing is more important than what passes in the morning at her toilet, where she is surrounded by her women: the general of an army does not pay more attention to place his right or left wing, than she does to find out the proper situation of a patch, or to discover the beauties of a new cap.

After the massacre of St. Bartholomew, Charles the Ninth having written to all the governors, to destroy the Huguenots in their respective governments, the Viscount D'Orte, who commanded in Bayonne, wrote to the king these words: Sire, I have found in my government good citizens and brave soldiers, but not an executioner; thus they and I beg of your Majesty, to employ our arms and lives on other occasions.

Cæsar forbade women under the age of 45 years, and who had neither husband nor children, to wear jewels, and
to

to be carried in a litter. An excellent method to attack celibacy by pride.

What can be more magnanimous than the resolution taken by Lewis the Fourteenth, king of France, to bury himself under the ruins of his throne, rather than to accept of proposals which he thought dishonourable! He had a soul too elevated to descend lower than his misfortunes had brought him, and he knew courage was sufficient to give a new strength to his kingdom.

Diana had her temple at Ephesus; it was one of the seven wonders of the world: Erostratus set it on fire to make his name immortal; but the Ephesians prohibited, on pain of death, to mention the name of that monster.

ARTICLE V.

Of Verbs governing the Genitive Case.

189 <i>S'aviser</i> , to take it in one's head.	<i>Etre facté</i> , to be sorry.
<i>S'apercevoir</i> , to perceive.	<i>S'informer</i> , to inquire.
<i>Avoir pitié</i> , to have pity.	<i>S'indigner</i> , to be angry.
<i>Avoir besoin</i> , to want.	<i>Jouir</i> , to enjoy,
<i>S'approcher</i> , to approach.	<i>Languir</i> , to languish.
<i>S'acquiter</i> , to acquit.	<i>Se moquer</i> , to laugh at.
<i>S'affliger</i> , to afflict one's self.	<i>Manquer</i> , to want.
<i>Abuser</i> , to make a bad use.	<i>Se méfier</i> , to distrust.
<i>S'attrister</i> , to afflict one's self.	<i>Médire</i> , to slander.
<i>S'abstenir</i> , to abstain.	<i>Mourir</i> , to die.
<i>Se contenter</i> , to content one's self.	<i>Se piquer</i> , to pride in.
<i>Convenir</i> , to agree.	<i>Se réjouir</i> , to rejoice.
<i>Disconvenir</i> , to deny.	<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.
<i>Se desfer</i> , to mistrust.	<i>Se rétracter</i> , to retract.
<i>Se desister</i> , to desist.	<i>Se fâcier</i> , to care for.
<i>S'embarrasser</i> , to trouble one's self.	<i>Se servir</i> , to use.
	<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember.
	<i>Se vanter</i> , to boast.
	<i>User</i> , to make use.

E X A M P L E.

Let us rejoice at the great victory obtained over our enemies.

Réjouissons nous de la grande victoire remportée sur nos ennemis.

Hannibal could conquer, but he did not know how to improve his victory, he enjoyed for some time the delicacies of Capua, after the battle of Cannæ, but he soon repented his error.

Annibal savoit vaincre, mais il ne savoit pas se servir de sa victoire : il jouit pendant quelque tems des délices de Capoue après la bataille de Cannés ; mais il se repentit bientôt de son erreur.

E X E R C I S E.

If you want any thing, I beg you may speak, I shall be glad to serve you.

I shall go near the wall if you choose it.

Do you want your books?

We perceived the trick when it was too late.

I rejoice at the good news I have received this day from my brother, who is in France ; he is happy in that beautiful country, and he enjoys good health.

I pity the misery of those people, who are the sad victims of the horrors of war.

He laughs at the misfortune of others, but others, perhaps, will laugh at him.

Every one blames me for my kindness towards him, and last year the same persons blamed me for my rigour.

He rejoices at his uncle's death, because he inherits a large estate, which he will enjoy for the remainder of his life.

If you repent sincerely of your sins, God will forgive you ; for he desires not the death of a sinner.

Remember the promise you made, to pay me, this week, the money which I lent you in the month of August last.

M

I shall

I shall call at my brother's, and inquire after the state of his health: I take pride in the love I have for him.

ARTICLE VI.

Of Verbs governing the Dative Case.

190 The following verbs will have the noun or pronoun that follows them in the dative case:

Applaudir, to applaud.

Aboutir, to end in.

S'attacher, to give one self.

S'attendre, to expect.

S'amuser, to amuse one self.

Compatir, to commiserate.

Contrevenir, to infringe.

Déplaire, to displease.

Donner, to give.

S'exposer, to expose one self.

Se fier, to trust.

Insulter, to insult.

Nuire, to hurt.

S'occuper, to employ one self.

Obeir, to obey.

Plaire, to please.

Penser, to think.

Pourvoir, to provide.

Pardonner, to forgive.

Prétendre, to pretend.

Passer le tems, to pass away the time.

Résister, to resist.

Renoncer, to renounce.

Ressembler, to resemble.

Survivre, to out live.

Se soumettre, to submit.

Tendre, } to aim at.

Viser, }

EXAMPLE.

Though she pleases her father and mother, she displeases all her masters.

Quoi qu'elle plaise à ses pere et mere, elle déplaît à tous ses maitres.

He has no design to hurt him; on the contrary he provides for his welfare.

Il n'a pas dessein de lui nuire; au contraire il pourvoit à son bien être.

EXER-

EXERCISE.

My son is like his mother, but my sister is very like me.

If I was not afraid to displease my uncle, I would advise him not to trust the flattering discourses of those who surround him.

An able minister thinks on the welfare of the state that is intrusted to his care, he provides for the safety of the people, and strives to enable them to resist the attacks of their enemies.

A young woman ought to obey not only her parents, but also those who have the care of her education.

You may trust my word, for I never fail to perform my promises.

Regulus advised the Romans, to renounce every tie of connection with the Carthaginians, though by this advice he exposed himself to the resentment of that nation; but he preferred death to the thought of outliving the disgrace of his country.

A soldier who infringes the orders of his officer, exposes himself to the greatest punishment, and no body commiserates his misfortune; for obedience is the first duty of the military life.

I applaud the resolution which you have taken, of renouncing the errors of your youth.

R U L E I.

The following verbs govern the dative of the person who is the subject of the discourse.

Apporter, to bring.

Donner, to give.

Devoir, to owe.

Enseigner, to teach.

Prêter, to lend.

Promettre, to promise.

Payer, to pay.

Rendre, return, give back.

E X A M P L E.

I came from the country; I brought *my father* a brace of partridges; I promised *you* a hare, but I could not kill any.

Je viens de la campagne; j'ai apporté à mon pere une paire de perdrix; je vous avois promis un lievre; mais je n'en ai pu tuer aucun.

Render unto Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's.

Rendez à César les choses qui sont à César.

E X E R C I S E.

I promised to pay my brother the money which you owe him; I hope you will return me that sum as soon as it is in your power.

I lent your sister a book, but she never returned it to me.

Will you teach my son French?

I have taught several ladies and gentlemen French; but I never had a pupil who did me so much credit as you.

R U L E II.

- 192 The verb *jouer* to play, governs the genitive case after it, when one speaks of musical instruments: but when we speak of games, the noun that comes after must be in the dative case.

E X A M P L E.

My sister plays *on* the harpsichord with a great deal of taste.

Ma sœur joue du claveffin avec beaucoup de gout.

Can you play *at* piquet?

Savez vous jouer au piquet?

E X E R-

E X E R C I S E.

He plays very well on the flute.

I dined yesterday at the castle ; after dinner the lord lieutenant played pharao ; the ladies played whist, and I played piquet with the duke of Leinster.

Can she play on the guitar ?

No, but she plays on the harpsichord.

Do you play at cards ?

I play whist sometimes to oblige the company.

If you come to see me to-morrow, we shall have a little concert ; I shall sing with you ; my brother will play on the flute ; the captain on the fiddle, and his sister on the guitar.

O F T H E

U S E

O F

T E N S E S.

I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

P R E S E N T.

193 **T**HIS tense is used to express what exists, or is doing in the time wherein we speak : as, *Je chante*, which is rendered into English by *I sing*, *I do sing*, *I am singing*.

E X A M P L E.

The Spaniards have some kind of civilities which would appear strange to us ; as for example, an officer never strikes a soldier without asking his leave, and the inquisition never burns a Jew without asking his pardon.

Les Espagnols ont de petites politesses qui nous paroitraient mal placées ; par exemple, un capitaine ne bat jamais son soldat sans lui en demander permission, et l'inquisition ne fait jamais bruler un juif sans lui en faire ses excuses.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

The mildness of government contributes to the increase of the people; republics are a striking proof of it.

A despotic state is that where a single person, without laws and without rules, moves every thing by his will and his caprice.

Pride produces idleness, the Spanish nation is a striking proof of it.

Happy is the people whose king says, I am the sovereign of a people who love me; the fathers of families wish the length of my life as for that of their children; the children dread the losing me, as much as they do their fathers; my subjects are happy, and their happiness increases mine.

OBSERVATION.

Sometimes in English, the present tense is used in a future signification, (but it is merely an idiom) which is not allowed in French, therefore in this sentence.

When *I am* in the country, I shall go a hunting.
We must say,

Quand je serai à la campagne, j'irai à la chasse.

And not,

Quand je suis.

EXERCISE.

When you bring me the letter I expect, I will give you a handsome reward.

When you write to your father, present my compliments to him.

N. B. There

N. B. There is a similar expression made use of in French where the present has a future sense, viz. *je suis à vous dans un moment.* I shall be with you in a moment.

2d OBSERVATION.

- 196 We use sometimes the present tense to express a thing past; but it is only in a kind of emphasis, in orations, poems, and set discourses, &c. and this is done in every other language.

EXAMPLE.

How could I describe the horrors of that night? The enemy advances in silence, puts the advanced guard to the sword; breaks open the gates, sets the town on fire, murders without pity those who wish to escape the flames; neither sex nor age can be a plea against their fury.

Comment pourrais je décrire les horreurs de cette nuit? L'ennemi s'avance en silence, pousse la garde avancée au fil de l'épée, enfonce les portes, met le feu à la ville, met à mort sans pitié tous ceux qui veulent éviter les flammes; leur rage n'épargne ni sexe ni âge.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

THE difference between this tense and the preterperfect is certainly one of the nicest points of our language, and nothing can be more insufficient than what is found in the grammars to explain that difficulty; too much attention cannot, therefore, be paid to the following rules, shewing the different instances in which they are to be used.

RULE

R U L E I.

The imperfect is used when we speak of an event, 197
present at the time of another past event that we also
mention.

E X A M P L E.

'The duke was in France when your father died.
Le duc étoit en France quand votre père mourut.

Here the imperfect is used, because it was at your
father's death that the duke was in France.

E X E R C I S E.

Their trade was flourishing when the war began, their
treasury was full, their armies numerous and well disci-
plined, they were the terror of the neighbouring princes, they
had extensive dominion in the four parts of the world; in
short, like all other empires, they were at the zenith of
their glory, and did not think it was possible to them to
decline.

The people were in suspense when the express arrived,
they did not know if the news was good or bad, their fears
were painted in their countenances, their features expressed
the anxiety of their hearts.

R U L E II.

The same tense is also used when we speak of an 198
action past that was reiterated, or that might have
been repeated several times.

E X A M P L E.

When he *was* at Rome, he went often to see the
pictures of the Vatican.

Quand.

Quand il étoit à Rome, il alloit souvent voir les tableaux du Vatican.

E X E R C I S E.

Amongst the Huns, the children entered in a rage at the recital of the fine actions of their ancestors, and the fathers shed tears because they could not imitate their children.

The Germans knew but two capital crimes, they hanged traitors and drowned cowards; those were the two only crimes that were public amongst them, it seems that in the time of Tacitus they were yet in a state of nature; for other crimes they only inflicted pecuniary punishments: those warlike and free men thought their blood ought not to be shed but in the field of battle.

R U L E III.

199. The imperfect is also used speaking of the good or bad qualities of dead creatures, rational or irrational.

E X A M P L E.

The Marquis of Granby was a great general.

Le Marquis de Granby étoit un grand général.

I am very sorry for the death of my horse, he was a very quiet beast.

Je suis fâché de la mort de mon cheval, c'étoit un animal bien tranquille.

E X E R C I S E.

Cicero had excellent talents for a second rank, but was not capable of filling the first; he had a fine genius, but a common soul; the ruling passion of Cicero was virtue, of Cato it was glory. Cicero was generally moved by selfishness; Cato always forgot himself: the latter wished to serve the republic for her own sake, the former to boast of it.

it. When Cato foresaw, Cicero feared; where Cato had hopes, Cicero thought himself sure of success. The first saw all things in cold blood, the other through a hundred mean passions.

Bucephalus, Alexander's horse, was so fiery that no one ever attempted to mount him except his master.

R U L E IV.

In a relation of what is past, we use the imperfect tense to describe places, weather, dress, manners of people, &c.

E X A M P L E.

That grotto was cut out of the rock in vaults incrufted with pebbles and shells, it was adorned with a young vine that spread equally its soft branches on all sides; the gentle zephirs preserved a delightful coolness in that place in spite of the burning rays of the sun, &c. *Telemaque*, liv. 1.

Cette grotte étoit toillée dans le roc, en voutes pleines de rocailles et de coquilles, elle étoit tapissée d'une jeune vigne qui étendoit également ses branches souples de tous côtés. Les doux zéphirs conservoient en ce lieu malgré les ardeurs du soleil une délicieuse fraîcheur, &c.

E X E R C I S E.

In ancient Rome the distribution of the houses of the people of quality was such, that the door formed on the outside a kind of portico supported by pillars, and intended to serve as a shelter against the inclemency of the weather to the clients that came every morning to pay their duty to their patrons; the yard was in general surrounded by several buildings with porticos on the ground floor, one entered first into a large hall, adorned with wax, silver, or marble family statues; Pliny mentions that there was at the top of the house a place that was looked upon as a chapel, in which
the

the images of their ancestors were placed. Every house was two stories high; on the first were the parlours and bed-chambers, on the second they eat and slept; it was uncommon to see any chimney in the apartments, but instead of them they made use of stoves; and in summer, to make the apartments cooler, they made use of tubes that came from the cellars, from whence they brought the fresh air into the rooms.

R U L E V.

- 201 The imperfect is generally made use of when we relate things past, until we come to mention something that compleats the sense; it keeps the mind in suspense to know what will follow, which is then expressed by a preterperfect.

E X A M P L E.

In the *mean* while Narbal, who knew Pigmalion, and who loved me, waited with impatience for my departure, fearing I should be discovered by the king's spies, who were night and day walking through the city; but the winds did not permit us to embark; whilst we were engaged in visiting curiously the port, we saw an officer of Pigmalion coming to us, who said to Narbal.

Cependant Narbal qui connoissoit Pigmalion et qui m'aimoit, attendoit avec impatience mon départ; craignant que je ne fusse découvert par les espions du roi, qui alloient nuit et jour par toute la ville, mais les vents ne nous permettoient pas de nous embarquer, pendant que nous étions occupés à visiter curieusement le port nous vîmes venir à nous un officier du roi, qui dit à Narbal, &c.

On inspection of those lines it will be perceived, that should the period be divided in any part, it would not give any compleat sense until you come
towards

towards the conclusion, we saw an officer, &c. and for that reason the imperfect tense is made use of in the course of it.

EXERCISE.

The company at the prince's was brilliant, and the entertainment noble ; it consisted chiefly of ices, creams, chocolate, sweetmeats and fruits, of which there was a great variety ; one half of the company played at cards, the rest amused themselves in conversation and walking on the terrace ; the young prince and princess, who are very amiable, were playing at cross purposes, and in short, pleasure and mirth shone on the countenances of all those who were present.

The courtiers, who knew the violent temper of their sovereign, were afraid to tell him that bad news, they dreading the first effects of his anger ; at last one of them, who had some power over his master's mind, resolved to go to him, &c.

RULE VI.

When we meet in English a participle preceded by the imperfect of the verb *être*, we strike off the verb *être*, and put the participle in the same tense and person as the verb *être* was.

EXAMPLE.

I was looking at those pictures, whilst you *were speaking* to him.

Je regardois ces tableaux pendant que vous lui parliez.

N. B. In most cases where we use the imperfect in French, this construction of the participle, with the imperfect of the verb *to be*, could be introduced in English.

N

EXAM-

E X A M P L E.

Whilst I cried, he laughed.

The construction could be,

Whilst I was crying, he was laughing.

Pendant que je pleurois il rioit.

E X E R C I S E.

Whilst the city of Rome was burning, Nero from the terrace of his palace was playing a tune, composed on the burning of Troy; the monster was laughing with his courtiers, who were enjoying the dreadful sight.

Sylla, a passionate man, was conducting violently the Romans to liberty; Augustus, deceitful tyrant, was leading them gently to slavery; whilst under Sylla, the republic was gathering new strength, the whole people were declaiming against tyranny; and whilst under Augustus, tyranny was increasing, nothing was spoken of but liberty.

R U L E VII.

- 204 The imperfect tense is used sometimes to denote a thing uncertain, and which has something of the future, but with uncertainty; in this case it is always attended by a conditional tense either before or after, and is generally preceded by *si*; that tense is in that case marked in English by *should*.

E X A M P L E.

If I did not esteem him, I should not have any friendship for him.

Si je ne l'estimois je n'aurois pas d'amitié pour lui.

Should he happen to come, what would you do?

S'il venoit que feriez vous?

E X E R -

EXERCISE.

If they should succeed in this war, the consequence would be dreadful.

If virtue reigned amongst us, we should be the happiest people on the surface of the earth.

If his sister should die, he would have a large fortune.

PRETERPERFECT.

RULE I.

THIS tense is used to express a thing passed in 205 a time of which nothing remains, and in which we are no more.

EXAMPLE.

I paid him yesterday.

Je le payai hier.

I saw her last year.

Je la vis l'année passée.

N. B. The difference between this tense and the 206 imperfect, in French is, that by dividing it from the rest of the sentence, it makes sense by itself; whereas the latter does not as was seen before, (201.)

If for example, I say,

J'écrivis hier à mon pere.

This is absolute sense, and does not require any thing to compleat it:

But if I say,

J'écrivois hier à mon pere.

This would be absolute nonsense, unless I bring something after to finish it ; as :

Quand vous vintes, &c.

E X E R C I S E.

The Lord Lieutenant went to the play Wednesday last, and seemed to take great pleasure in seeing Mrs. Barry play the part of Calista in the Fair Penitent.

There was a concert at the Music-hall yesterday, in which several excellent musicians made their talents appear.

I received your letter in the beginning of the last week, the good news that was in it gave me great pleasure.

My sister fell sick last month ; I was very uneasy during some days, but the doctor has pronounced her out of danger.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 207 We cannot make use of this tense unless the time we speak of be so perfectly past that nothing remains of it, we could not, therefore say,

Je reçus votre lettre ce matin.

I received your letter this morning.

Because the day is not perfectly past ; and for the same reason, it would be wrong to say,

Je la vis au commencement de cette semaine.

I saw her in the beginning of this week.

- 208 But in those cases we make use of the preterperfect indefinite, or compound of the present tense.

J'ai reçu votre lettre ce matin, je l'ai vu au commencement de cette semaine.

E X E R C I S E.

I went to church this morning: I heard an excellent sermon.

We have seen great events in this century.

We had great news this month.

R U L E II.

In relations we make use of the preterperfect, to relate facts, and the actions of the dead.

E X A M P L E.

Richelieu cleared up the rules of monarchy, taught France the secret of its strength, and to Spain that of its weakness; took away from Germany its old chains, gave it new ones; destroyed by turns all powers.

Richelieu éclaircit les regles de la monarchie, apprit à la France le secret de ses forces, à l'Espagne celui de sa foiblesse, ôta à l'Allemagne ses anciennes chaines, lui en donna de nouvelles; brisa tour à tour toutes les puissances.

E X E R C I S E.

Of the kings that the Romans attacked, Mithridates alone defended himself with courage, and brought them into danger. He made all the world know that he was an enemy to the Romans, and should always be so. That prince, after having vanquished the Roman generals and made the conquest of Asia, Macedonia, and of Greece, was vanquished in his turn by Sylla, put to flight by Lucullus, who obliged him to take shelter in his own dominions. Overcome by Pompey, he flew from his native country, and running from danger to danger he formed the design of carrying the war into the heart of Italy; but betrayed by Pharnaces, and by an army frightened at the greatness of his attempts, he died as became a king.

Lucretia's death was a signal given to the Roman people to engage them to take up arms against tyranny ; they banished the family of the Tarquins, proscribed the name of kings, and elected two magistrates named consuls, to whom they intrusted an authority, which was to last one year.

R U L E III.

- 210 We use the preterperfect to express an action done or happened but once, or a certain number of times expressed by an adverb, as can be seen in the preceding examples.

F U T U R E

- 211 **E**XPRESSES what is to be done or to happen hereafter.

E X A M P L E.

I shall go and take a walk after dinner, if the weather be fine.

J'irai me promener, après diner s'il fait beau.

E X E R C I S E.

I shall go to church Sunday next ; will you come with me ?

Every country into the heart of which luxury creeps, will fall by its own weight.

I will go to the Castle to-morrow. We shall have a ball and a brilliant supper.

O B S E R-

OBSERVATION.

When the word *will* is made use of in a sentence 212 to express, to *have a mind*, or to *be willing*, then in that case it must no more be looked upon as an auxiliary of the future tense; but must be translated into French by the present tense of the verb *vouloir*; this the sense of the sentence must direct us in.

EXAMPLE.

Will you play a game at whist?

Voulez vous faire une partie de whist?

Here we use the verb *vouloir*, because it is evident that the sentence means to know if he has a mind to play a game at whist.

EXERCISE.

Will you do me the honour to dine with me on Thursday? Your friend will dine with us.

I will not drink any more, that wine is too strong; I will drink a glass of Burgundy, if you please.

I received a Spanish letter, will you translate it for me?

RULE I.

It may not be improper to observe here, that the 213 word *prochain*, signifying next, always comes after the substantive.

EXAMPLE.

I will pay you next month.

Je vous payerai le mois prochain.

EXER-

E X E R C I S E.

The troops will be encamped until the latter end of the next month.

My father will be in town towards the middle of the next week.

PRETERPERFECT INDEFINITE.

- 214 **T**HIS tense, formed by the present tense of an auxiliary verb joined to a supine, is used to denote a thing past at a time that we do not mention; or to express an action past at a time of which there remains still some part.

E X A M P L E.

The Phœnicians were the first who ventured themselves on a weak vessel to trade in unknown parts.

Les Phéniciens ont été les premiers qui se soient hasardés sur un frêle navire pour commercer dans des terres inconnues.

I saw your brother this week.

J'ai vu votre frere cette semaine.

In the first of these examples, no particular time is mentioned; in the second, the time is not so past but there remains part of it still; as the week is not out as supposed.

E X E R C I S E.

I received a letter to day, which gives me great pleasure.

The

The birds of the air, the fish of the sea, and the brutes of the wilderness, were created for the use of men.

A great event took place in the course of this century: a planet has made its appearance in the western world, whose light will in a short time dazzle all the universe.

N. B. The same tense is used before *depuis*, since. 115

EXAMPLE.

I wrote since I saw you.

J'ai écrit depuis que je ne vous ai vu.

EXERCISE.

On the different tenses of verbs mixed promiscuously.

When the khan of Tartary has dined, a herald publishes aloud, that all princes on the earth may go to dinner if they please. That barbarian, who eats nothing but milk, who has no house, who lives by plunder, looks upon all kings as his slaves, and insults them regularly twice a day.

Idleness is a consequence of haughtiness, work is the effect of pride; the haughtiness of a Spaniard inclines him not to work; the pride of a Frenchman induces him to know how to work better than another.

The history of the Romans has attractive charms; to this very day, in their metropolis, we neglect the new palaces to go and examine the ruins. The Roman people more than any other were agitated by unexpected fights; that of the bloody corpse of Lucretia, put an end to royalty; the debtor who appeared in the *forum*, covered with wounds, made the form of government change in the republic; the sight of Virginia destroyed the authority of the *decemviri*; the robe of Cæsar, stained with his blood, threw Rome into slavery again.

The most absolute authority is that of a prince, who succeeds to a republican government; for he finds himself invested with all the powers of the people, who did not
know

know how to put bounds to it; thus we see the Kings of Denmark and Sweden exercising the most arbitrary power in Europe.

The exact proportion of the famous church of St. Peter at Rome, hinders it from appearing as large as it really is; if it was less broad she would be surpris'd at its length; if it was less long its breadth would strike us; but by degrees, as we examine it, the eye sees it increasing; it may be compared to the Pyrenean mountains, where the eye, which thought to measure them at first sight discovers mountains behind mountains, and loses itself more and more.

C H A P. XIX.

Of the Conjunctive Mood.

R U L E I.

216 **T**H E conjunctive mood is made use of after the following conjunctions.

<i>Avant que,</i>	before.
<i>A moins que,</i>	unless.
<i>A fin que,</i>	that, to the end that.
<i>A Dieu ne plaise que,</i>	God forbid.
<i>Au cas que, }</i>	in case that.
<i>En cas que, }</i>	
<i>Bien loin que,</i>	very far from.
<i>Ce n'est pas que,</i>	it is not that.
<i>De peur que,</i>	for fear that.
<i>De crainte que,</i>	lest.
<i>Dieu veuille que,</i>	God grant.
<i>Malgré que,</i>	though.
<i>Nonobstant que,</i>	notwithstanding that.
<i>Non que, }</i>	not that.
<i>Non pas que, }</i>	
<i>Pourvu que,</i>	provided.
<i>Quoique,</i>	though.
<i>Pour peu que,</i>	ever so little.

<i>Plût à Dieu que,</i>	would to God.
<i>Soit que,</i>	whether.
<i>Sans que,</i>	without that.
<i>Suppose que.</i>	suppose that.

EXAMPLE.

Suppose that you write to him.

Suppose que vous lui écriviez.

Though he be my friend.

Quoiqu'il soit mon ami.

RULE II.

Any verb expressing some desire, affection, or motion of the soul, governs the conjunctive mood with the particle *que*. 217

EXAMPLE.

I desire you will do this for my sake.

Je veux que vous fassiez cela pour l'amour de moi.

I question whether he will do it.

Je doute qu'il le fasse.

EXERCISE.

Do you believe you can improve without care and attention?

I don't think there can be true friendship in that vicious man.

They did not think that he had a design to cheat you.

We are surprised that you do not speak to her.

I wish he may succeed with all my heart.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 218 When the verbs, mentioned in the above rule are attended with a noun or pronoun, as accusative or dative, the verb following it is put in the infinitive mood with the preposition *de* before it.

E X A M P L E.

I order you to behave better.

Je vous ordonne de vous mieux conduire.

R U L E III.

- 219 All verbs preceded by *ne* or *si*, or used interrogatively, govern the conjunctive after the particle *que* that follows them.

E X A M P L E.

I do not believe he is an honest man.

Je ne crois pas qu'il soit honnête homme.

If you think he is arrived, send for him.

Si vous croyez qu'il soit arrivé, envoyez le chercher.

Did you hear the king is dead?

Avez vous oui dire que le roi soit mort ?

E X E R C I S E.

I do not doubt but you will be soon perfect in the French language, if you follow my advice.

If it be true the battle is lost, we shall soon have a confirmation of it.

What would you have me do in this circumstance.

If I hear that he is recovered, I shall send you an express immediately.

R U L E

R U L E I I I.

The verb *il semble* being used without a noun or 220 pronoun governs the conjunctive mood.

E X A M P L E.

It seems he has neither eaten nor drank these three days.

Il semble qu'il n'ait ni bu ni mangé depuis trois jours.

But if the verb has a dative it governs the indicative mood. 221

E X A M P L E.

It seems to me they are afraid.

Il me semble qu'ils ont peur.

E X E R C I S E.

It seems it rained last night.

It seems to me that you do not understand that.

It seems that book is well wrote.

R U L E I V.

In any case where a verb is in the conjunctive mood, 222 if another follows, it must also be in the same mood.

E X A M P L E.

Do you assure me he expects I will come?

M'assurez vous qu'il s'attende que je vienne?

EXERCISE.

I do not believe he has ordered I should pay you.
 He fears I think you have a bad opinion of him.

RULE V.

- 225 The conjunction is to be used after the relative pronoun *qui* following a superlative or a negative; and the same pronoun governs the same mood in all its tenses, when it is placed between two verbs expressing desire or want.

EXAMPLE.

Choose for your friend a man that you esteem.

Choisissez pour ami un homme que vous estimez.

There is nobody but what knows it.

Il n'ya personne qui ne le sache.

She is the finest girl I ever saw.

Elle est la plus jolie fille que j'aye jamais vu.

RULE VI.

- 226 In most of the foregoing cases, where the verb is put in the present of the conjunctive mood, the English language has it in the future of the indicative.

EXAMPLE.

Do you think the viceroy will be at the Rotunda to-night?

Croyez vous que le viceroy soit à la Rotonde ce soir?

EXERCISE.

Do you think your brother will soon come?

I do not doubt but we shall have fine weather to-morrow, though it rains at present.

Does he think I shall forget his behaviour?

RULE VII.

The present tense of the conjunctive mood is to 227 be used, when the verb that precedes it is in the present or future : as,

Il faut que je lise.

Il faudra que je lise.

But if the verb that precedes the conjunctive is in 228 any other tense, we must use the imperfect of that mood : as,

<i>Je souhaitois,</i>	} <i>que vous lussiez.</i>
<i>J'ai souhaité,</i>	
<i>Je souhaitai,</i>	
<i>J'avois souhaité,</i>	

EXERCISE.

Happiness is not a thing that depends on riches, it is not a favour that a king can bestow, for his ministers are often the most unhappy men in his kingdom.

What cities can be compared with more justice to Rome and Carthage, than London and Paris? they are the capitals of the two most powerful nations that inhabit our globe; fierce rivals for a long series of centuries, who doubts but that national hatred will last until the total destruction of one of them.

He wants a wife, that is tolerably well as to her person; but that has besides some common sense, and a little fortune.

Lycurgus did not doubt but he should give stability to his new city by his laws; though he mingled theft with the spirit of strict justice, the hardest slavery that could exist, with an extreme liberty, and the most cruel sentiments, with the greatest lenity: It seemed he had a mind to deprive it of all resources, arts, trade, money, and even walls: Its citizens had ambition without hopes of being better; they had natural sentiments, though they were neither child, father, or husband; modesty even was disregarded. Who could have thought those should be the means that would bring Sparta to greatness and glory?

OBSERVATION.

- 229 Notwithstanding what has been said in the last rule, (227,) if the verb that is to be in the conjunctive mood, is in the past tense in English, it must be in the imperfect, or the compound of the present of the conjunctive in French, though the verb before should be in the present or future.

EXAMPLE.

I doubt he would have done it if I had asked him.

Je doute qu'il l'ait fait si je l'en eus prié.

C H A P. XX.

Of Participles.

R U L E I.

A Participle being considered as a verb expressing an action, is indeclinable.

E X A M P L E.

Women slanderer at a tea table, have a natural eloquence.

Des femmes médisant autour d'une table à thé, ont une éloquence naturelle.

But if the participle is used as an adjective, expressing some qualification of a substantive, it agrees with it in gender and number.

E X A M P L E.

I hate slanderer women.

Je hais les femmes médisantes.

E X E R C I S E.

The antient Romans fighting for their liberty, had a natural valour, which is unknown to our mercenaries.

She is a charming woman.

Antiquarians spending their time in making diligent inquiries on an old piece of brass, examining with indefatigable attention a broken pot, or a rusty iron, may be called diligent idlers.

The officers judging the expedition dangerous, wanted to dissuade the general from it.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

231 In the English language, we see often the participle preceded by a preposition; but we must observe here, that in French, the participle never follows any preposition but *en*, *in*; and we must in such a case always use the present tense of the infinitive mood.

N. B. *With*, before a participle, is translated into French by *de*, and the verb is put in the present of the infinitive mood.

E X A M P L E.

The art of representing objects is very different from that of making them known; the first pleases without instructing, the latter instructs without pleasing.

L'art de dépeindre les objets est bien différent de celui de les faire connoître à fond; le premier amuse sans instruire, l'autre instruit sans amuser.

E X E R C I S E.

So far from being shocked at a virtuous man for giving way to excessive grief, so far from suppressing our applause at his abject behaviour, we cannot abstain from applauding ourselves for the pity which he inspires us with.

Without seeking examples of virtue and valour in the antient history, let us peruse the annals of our own age, and there we shall find heroes worthy of being the rivals of Cæsar and Cato.

Music should be content with regulating the harmony of a concert, or presiding over the movements of a dance, without ever meddling with the affairs of the buskin.

O B S E R.

O B S E R V A T I O N .

The use of the participle is not so frequent in 232 French as in English ; we use it as seldom as possible, and mostly after the particle *en*, which is translated into English by *in*, *by*, or *with*.

E X A M P L E .

A king by putting himself at the head of his army, inspires intrepidity to his soldiers.

Un roi en se mettant à la tête de son armée, inspire de l'intrepidité à ses soldats.

N. B. When we use the participle in French, 233 the sentence could be construed in English by *whilst*, or *when*, as in the foregoing example ; the sentence could run thus :

When a king puts himself, &c.

E X E R C I S E .

Speaking to me, he thought of other things.

There are philosophers, who knowing the truth, will not tell it.

Masters improve by teaching, as well as their pupils by learning.

R U L E II.

The participle preceded in English by an article, 234 is rendered into French by a substantive that conveys the same sense.

E X A M P L E .

I am very fond of serious reading.

Je suis passionné de lectures sérieuses.

E X E R .

EXERCISE.

The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul.

The learning of languages is hard with a good master, but it becomes impossible with a bad one.

Our lives are sometimes taken from us, before the expiring of our youth.

RULE III.

- 235 When the English participle follows the verb *être*, the verb *être* is left out in French, and the person and tense it was in, is used for the verb that was in the participle.

EXAMPLE.

She is always *laughing*, even whilst others are *crying*.

Construe,

She always laughs, whilst others cry.

Elle rit toujours, même pendant que les autres pleurent.

EXERCISE.

As a rapid river is slowly excavating the banks that confine it, and at last overthrows them suddenly; thus the sovereign power was insensibly acting under Augustus, and overthrew every thing under Tiberius.

He was dancing when I went in.

Do not be teasing me so.

How can you be perpetually plaguing me in that manner?

Whilst they should be studying, they are playing.

C H A P. XXI.

Of Supines.

THIS part of verbs is sometimes used as an adjective, and in that case it is made to agree in gender and number with its substantive in the same manner as an adjective.

E X A M P L E.

Un homme estimé, une femme estimée : des hommes estimés, des femmes estimées.

But when it is used to form the compound tenses of verbs by joining it with an auxiliary, observe as general rules,

1st. That in the beginning of a sentence, being ²³⁷ joined with any tense of the verb *avoir*, it is indeclinable.

2dly, That being joined with the verb *être* it is de- ²³⁸ clinable, and agrees in gender and number with the nominative of the verb *être*.

E X A M P L E.

In Switzerland women have fought several times for liberty.

En Suisse les femmes ont combattu plusieurs fois pour la liberté.

For that reason those heroines were esteemed even by their enemies.

Pour

Pour cette raison ces heroïnes furent estimées même par leurs ennemis.

EXERCISE.

Drunkenness has been established through the world in proportion to the cold and dampness of the climates.

The mines of Potosi were discovered in the year 1545.

Mass was abolished, and the Reformed Religion established in England in the year 1548.

Cleopatra lost Mark Antony the empire of the world.

Our amiable Queen is beloved by all her subjects, she has won the affections of all the inhabitants of these realms.

RULE I.

- 239 The supine following the verb *avoir* is declinable, when the verb *avoir* is preceded by the accusative of a pronoun, and it agrees with the gender and number of the substantive to which the pronoun is related.

EXAMPLE.

Have you seen the letters that I wrote to him?

Avez vous vu les lettres que je lui ai écrites?

Yes, I have seen them.

Oui, je les ai vues.

In the first of those examples *écrites* agrees with *lettres*, because the verb *avoir* is preceded by the accusative *que*, and in the second *vues* is made feminine and plural, because it is preceded by the accusative *les*, which relates to the substantive *lettres* which is both feminine and plural.

EXERCISE.

The comedies which he has composed have many beauties.
 The mare I have bought is beautiful; I have shewn her
 to a famous jockey, who has admired her very much.
 The watch which my father bought for me was excellent,
 but I lent it to a friend who has broken it to pieces.

EXCEPTIONS.

Though the supine should be preceded by the accusative of a pronoun, it is indeclinable in the following cases. 240

I. When the nominative follows the verb.

EXAMPLE.

The resolution the king had taken.

La résolution qu'avoit pris le roi.

This is rather a more elegant manner of speaking, but in the usual way of conversation, I would say,

La résolution que le roi avoit prise.

EXERCISE.

The pains my friends had taken have been useless.

The battle that the English have won is decisive.

II. When it is immediately followed by *que*.

241

EXAMPLE.

The conduct he thought I should disapprove.

La conduite qu'il a cru que je desapprouverois.

E X E R C I S E.

The business which I had foreseen you would have.

The success which he had foretold I should have in this affair has been very great.

The lesson I had intended you should learn is in the beginning of the book.

N. B. In those exercises, that *que* is understood.

242 III. When it is used impersonally.

E X A M P L E.

The rains we had last month have spoiled the harvest.

Les pluies, qu'il a fait le mois dernier ont ruiné la moisson.

E X E R C I S E.

The excessive heat we had lately is very unwholesome.

243 IV. The supines of the verbs *pouvoir, vouloir, devoir*, are always indeclinable.

E X A M P L E.

He took all the trouble he could take.

Il s'est donné toute la peine qu'il a pu se donner.

E X E R C I S E.

He made all the excuses he could make.

I gave him all the advices I could give him, but he did not pay them the attention he ought to have paid them.

R U L E II.

When the supine is followed by the infinitive of the latter verb, it is indeclinable, if by striking off the infinitive the sentence does not give any compleat sense; but it is declinable if the infinitive being taken off, the remainder of the sentence gives still sense; this will be better understood by the following examples. 245

How many men fall into the disorders they had resolved to avoid!

Combien d'hommes tombent dans les désordres qu'ils avoient résolu d'éviter!

It is evident that if the infinitive is struck out of that sentence, there is not any sense in the remaining part of it, therefore the supine *résolu* is not to be declined.—In the next,

I have read the grammar you had given me to examine.

J'ai lu la grammaire que vous m'aviez donnée à examiner.

It will appear that if the words *à examiner* are struck off from that sentence, the rest will still give a sense, therefore the supine is there declinable.

If there is not any preposition before the infinitive that follows the supine; the supine is declinable if the infinitive mood may be rendered into French by the imperfect of the indicative mood with the relative *qui* without altering the sense. 246.

E X A M P L E.

I went to your sister's; I heard her sing.

J'ai été chez votre sœur, je l'ai entendue chanter.

P

The

The supine is here declinable, because I could say,
Je l'ai entendue qui chantoit, which would not be the case
 in the next sentence where it is indeclinable.

C'est une belle chanson, je l'ai entendu chanter.

It is a fine song, I heard it sung.

EXERCISE.

She is an excellent actress, I saw her play several times.

The new comedy is excellent, full of beauties. I saw it
 played in London.

The fleet you saw depart from Bristol is safe arrived at
 the Cape of Good Hope.

The watch you ordered to be made is not yet finished.

Do not you remember the resolution you had taken to
 quit all bad company?

How many men fall daily into the disorders they had pro-
 mised to shun!

Do not you wish to practise the virtues you heard praised?

It is a new fort which he has learnt to make.

It is a consequence which I have always thought they
 would infer.

R U L E III.

- 247 In verbs reflective the supine is not declinable
 when it is followed by the accusative of the verb.

EXAMPLE.

Lucretia killed herself.

Lucrece s'est tuée.

Lucretia put herself to death.

Lucrece s'est donné la mort.

In the second of those examples *donné* does not agree
 in gender with *Lucrece*, because *la mort* follows, which
 is the accusative.

EXER-

EXERCISE.

Your mother represented to herself the pleasure you should have to see her.

All your friends have rejoiced at your good success.

The Dutch have entirely addicted themselves to trade, and by it they have acquired great riches.

She has let herself be seduced by his fine promises.

These Ladies had fancied to themselves that we could not refuse them any thing.

RULE IV.

The supine is indeclinable after a reflexive verb 248 when it is followed by an adjective that refers to the nominative of the verb, and makes part of it.

EXAMPLE.

Joan d'Arc made herself famous by her victories over the English.

Jeanne d'Arc s'est rendu fameuse par ses victoires sur les Anglois.

Rendu is indeclinable, because it is followed by *fameuse*, which refers and expresses an immediate qualification of Joan d'Arc.

EXERCISE.

The Amazons have rendered themselves celebrated by their bravery.

The Spaniards have made themselves masters of that important place, and the garrison surrendered prisoners of war.

The Queen has found herself injured by this proceeding of the ministry.

All that has been said, No. 4, 5, 6, 7, must be 249 applied to the supines, when they are declinable.

C H A P. XXII.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Il y a.

- 250 **T**HIS impersonal verb is used to denote a quantity, of number, space, or time; it is translated in English as follows,

By, *there is, there are, &c.*

E X A M P L E.

There are men who prefer riches to virtue.

Il y a des hommes qui préfèrent les richesses à la vertu.

- 251 When *there is*, or *there are*, is repeated in the English sentence, or when *some* is added to it, it is done in French by adding *en* before the verb.

E X A M P L E.

There are rich merchants in that town, but *there are* some very poor.

Il y a de riches négociants dans cette ville, mais il y en a de fort pauvres.

- 252 N. B. What is said here of the present of *il y a*, may be applied to any other tense: as,

Il y avoit, il y en avoit.

There was, there were, &c.

E X E R C I S E.

There is great news from our army, but there is some of more importance from our fleet.

There

There have been, and there will always be, hypocrites in all religions.

If America is independant, there will be great revolutions in the system of politicks in Europe.

There is nothing so afflicting, as consolations drawn from the necessity of evil, from the order of the fates, and from the wretchedness of human nature.

OBSERVATION.

Is there? are there? are translated into French by 253 *y a t'il*, and in case of repetition in the same sentence, or the addition of *some*, it is translated by *y en a t'il*.

EXAMPLE.

There are many people called learned, but are there many who deserve the name?

Il y a beaucoup de gens appellés sçavans, mais y en t'il beaucoup qui méritent ce nom?

EXERCISE.

How many leagues are there from London to Dublin?

There has been a great battle, the 22d of the last month.

Are there not many things in our studies, that are of little or no importance?

Is there any thing more commendable, than civility towards every body, in a lady of fashion?

OBSERVATION.

The word *ago*, is translated into French by *il y a*. 254

EXAMPLE.

I saw your brother three months ago.

Je vis votre frere il y a trois mois.

EXERCISE.

My father died two months ago.

His sister was married three years ago to a captain.

RULE.

- 255 How long, how far, are translated into French by *combien y a t'il que*, then the nominative of the verb follows, and afterwards the verb.

EXAMPLE.

How long have you been ill?

Combien y a t'il que vous etes malade?

- 256 N. B. The answer to those sorts of questions must be made by *il y a*.

EXAMPLE.

How long is she married? Three months.

Combien y a t'il qu'elle est mariée? Il y a trois mois.

How far is Dublin from Corke?

Combien y a t'il de Dublin à Corke?

One hundred and seventy miles.

Il y a cent soixante, et dix miles.

EXER-

EXERCISE.

How long is it since Sir William Penn settled himself in Pennsylvania? Ninety eight years.

How long is it since the castle of Dublin was built by Bishop Cummin? Five hundred and sixty five years?

How long has Oliver Cromwell been dead? One hundred and twenty years.

OBSERVATION.

When the word *some* at the beginning of a sentence, can be turned into *there are some*; it is rendered into French by *il y a*.

EXAMPLE.

Some people are apt to speak ill of others.

Il y a des gens enclins à parler mal des autres.

EXERCISE.

Some books are very dangerous for youth.

Some people believe we shall have peace soon, but there are others who think the contrary.

Some ladies in this city, are compleat mistresses of the French language.

Some people are ready to make protestations of friendship, but if they are put to a trial, their manner of speaking is altered.

N. B. When *there is*, or *there are*, are used in speaking of things present, they must be translated by *voilà*.

EXAM-

E X A M P L E.

There is a fine woman.

Voilà une belle femme.

Il est c'est.

Those two impersonal verbs being rendered in English by the same *it is*, there is a certain difficulty to know in what circumstances each is to be used; and we must observe, that what we are going to note in the following observations, may be applied to any tense of those verbs.

N. B. In asking questions, *est il* and *est ce*, are used.

1st O B S E R V A T I O N.

258 *Il est* is used before nouns denoting time.

E X A M P L E.

What is it o'clock?

Quelle heure est il?

It was late when I left him last night.

Il étoit tard quand je le quittai hier au soir.

But if we speak at the time the clock strikes, we use *c'est*.

E X A M P L E.

What is the clock striking? It is two o'clock.

Quelle heure est ce qui sonne? C'est deux heures.

E X E R -

EXERCISE.

It is time to go, it is three o'clock, it will be dark in an hour's time.

What hour is the clock striking? I believe it is four. No, it is but three.

Do not go, it is early yet, it is not one o'clock.

I beg your pardon, it is past two.

2d OBSERVATION.

Il est, is likewise used before any adjective, to which you could with propriety join the word *thing*, and the next infinitive is preceded by *de*. 259

EXAMPLE.

It is hard to plague me so.

We might say,

It is a hard thing to plague me so.

Il est dur de me tourmenter ainsi.

But if the word *chose* is introduced in the French sentence, we must use *c'est* and put *que de* before the next infinitive. 260

EXAMPLE.

C'est une chose dure que de me tourmenter ainsi.

EXERCISE.

It is prudent to stand upon one's guard against false friends.

It is not pardonable in any body to be proud, but much less in a person of quality.

It is hard to have to do with ungrateful people.

It

It is a glorious thing to die for one's country.
 Was it wise to trust himself to the promises of his enemy.
 Would it be fair to insult the unfortunate.
 It is a sad thing to have a bad conscience.
 It is shameful to be so long in bed.

3^d OBSERVATION.

- 261 When we intend to denote a person or thing that comes after the verb, or of which we were speaking before, we use *c'est*.

EXAMPLE.

Have you read *Telemachus*? Yes, it is an excellent work.

Avez vous lu Télémaque? Oui, c'est un ouvrage excellent.

EXERCISE.

You was in the right to write that letter, it is what you should have done before.

I have seen St. Peter's church at Rome; it is a masterpiece of architecture.

Have you seen the palace of St. James's? Yes, it is an old building, the principal entrance of which has the appearance of the gates of a prison.

RULE I.

- 262 When *it is*, is followed in English by a pronoun personal or possessive, we use *c'est* in French.

EXAMPLE.

It was you who gave him bad advice.

C'étoit vous qui lui donniez de mauvais conseils.

It

It is my duty.

C'est mon devoir.

N. B. If *it is*, is followed by a third person plural, we must put the verb *etre* in the third person plural; but if a question is asked we leave it impersonally in the third person singular.

EXAMPLE.

It was the Irish who were commanded by General Dillon.

C'étoient les Irlandois qui étoient commandés par le General Dillon.

But if I ask,

Was it the Irish who were commanded by General Dillon?

Then in that case, I must say,

Etoit-ce les Irlandois, &c.

EXERCISE.

It is his ancestors who by their virtues have acquired him the title of peer.

Are these the thoughts that ought to possess the heart of a Philosopher?

It was the Spaniards who conquered the kingdom of Peru in the year 1524.

It was the Earls of Ormond, and Desmond, who were at open war in Ireland in the year of our Lord 1567, in the reign of Queen Elizabeth.

RULE II.

It is, being followed by *with* in the English sentence, is translated in French, by *il en est* followed by the genitive case.

EXAM-

E X A M P L E.

It is with the French tongue, as with the English, they are both difficult to learn.

Il en est du François comme de l'Anglois, ce sont deux langues difficiles à apprendre.

E X E R C I S E.

It is with him as with all ignorant men, when they grow rich they grow impertinent.

It is with poetry as with painting, they require natural talents.

In many cases it is with women as with children.

264

Il fait, it is:

This impersonal is used to denote the disposition of the air, and weather, as

Il fait beau, it is fine weather.

Il fait du vent, it is windy.

Il faisoit de la pluie, it was raining:

E X E R C I S E.

What weather is it? It is bad weather.

If it be fine weather to-morrow, I shall go to the country.

It is very dark, do not go out to-night.

It is very cold now, but it will be warm towards twelve o'clock.

It is a beautiful moon-shine, the stars adorn the canopy of the heavens.

It was very dirty yesterday in the streets.

N. B. We may observe the same verb is used through all its tenses in the same sense.

R U L E

R U L E I.

The same impersonal is commonly made use of ²⁶⁵ with an adjective denoting some qualification of a place.

E X A M P L E.

It is dearer living in London than in Dublin.

Il fait plus cher vivre à Londres qu'à Dublin.

E X E R C I S E.

It is good living in the East Indies.

Yes, but it is better in Europe.

It is dangerous in Sicily during the Eruption of Vesuvius.

Il faut.

This verb, which is generally translated into English by the word *must*, denotes the necessity of doing something or want of something.

When the word *must* is preceded in the English sentence ²⁶⁶ by a substantive or a pronoun, and if the sentence denotes an absolute necessity of doing something, the construction of the French sentence, is as follows:

1st. The impersonal, followed by the conjunction *que*; then the substantive or pronoun followed by the verb in the conjunctive mood.

E X A M P L E.

A general must be as prudent as brave.

Il faut qu'un general soit aussi prudent que brave.

I must go to your cousin's.

Il faut que j'aille chez votre cousin.

Q

E X E R -

E X E R C I S E.

A young lady must apply early to acquire the qualifications necessary to improve her mind.

You must do what he desires.

I must buy a horse to go to the country.

Men must love virtue to be happy.

A soldier must not fear death.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 267 We translate by the same verb, and in the same manner, the following English expressions, viz. *It is necessary, requisite, needful.*

E X A M P L E.

It is requisite that a young man should listen to the counsels of people of experience.

Il faut qu'un jeune homme écoute les avis de gens expérimentés.

- 268 N. B. The word *should* is sometimes translated by the conditional *il faudroit*, and the next verb is in the imperfect of the conjunctive mood.

E X A M P L E.

He should be more cautious in his behaviour.

Il faudroit qu'il fût plus prudent dans sa conduite.

E X E R C I S E.

You must come and dine with me to day, for it is necessary that I should speak to you before my departure.

You should write to your brother.

You must dance at the Castle on the birth-day.

R U L E III.

When the expressions *must*, *should*, &c. are used 269
in general, to denote the necessity of doing something,
without being applied to any particular person, the
next verb must be in the present of the infinitive
mood.

E X A M P L E.

To enjoy good health one must live with sobriety.
Pour etre en bonne santé il faut vivre sobriement.

N. B. In common discourse, we observe sometimes 270
the same construction, when there is a pronoun personal
before *must*, and in this the sense of the discourse must
direct us.

E X A M P L E.

Come, you must sing.

Allons, il faut chanter.

We must play a game to pass away the time.

Il faut faire une partie pour passer le tems.

E X E R C I S E.

We must not believe those that flatter us ; but we must
not reject with incivility the compliments that are paid to us
when we think we deserve them.

You must go to the play, it is a new tragedy.

We must drink a bottle of wine, if you please.

We must not reject praises with affectation, but we must
not hanker after them too eagerly.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 271 We sometimes use the verb *il faut* without any verb ; and if there is a pronoun personal in the English sentence, we put it in French in the dative case between *il* and *faut*.

E X A M P L E.

'To live happy we must have money.

Pour vivre heureux il faut de l'argent.

I must have books.

Il me faut des livres.

Do you want a hat?

Vous faut-il un chapeau ?

E X E R C I S E.

If you will succeed you must have powerful friends.

I want a coat, I must buy one in that shop.

If order is necessary in things, variety is also necessary.

One must have money to go to law.

To pass the time agreeably in the country, one must have books.

O B S E R V A T I O N.

- 272 The verb *il faut* is used at the end of the sentence, to render the English expression *ought, should, is requisite, proper, &c.*

E X A M P L E.

He does not behave as he ought.

Il ne se conduit pas comme il faut.

She does what is requisite.

Elle fait ce-qu'il faut.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

I shall write to him what is necessary.
Go and speak to him,, as it is proper.
That is not done as it should be.
Do it as it ought to be.

N. B. We use in familiar discourse the following 273
expression.

Un homme comme il faut.

A man of fashion.

Une femme comme il faut.

A lady of fashion.

OBSERVATION.

When there is not an absolute immediate necessity, 274
we may use in French the verb *devoir*, to translate the
English expressions spoken of before.

EXAMPLE.

You ought to go and see him, it would be decent.

Vous devriez } aller le voir, cela seroit d cent.
il faut,

EXERCISE.

A young man must have a great deal of circumspection
in the choice of his company.

He must be older than you.

She must dance extremely well, for she has learnt a
long while.

You must be very rich, for you are very saving.

C H A P. XXIII.

Remarks on Prepositions.

Avant, devant.

274 **T**H E S E two prepositions are translated in English by *before*, but they are not to be used indiscriminately.

Avant is used to shew a priority of time, order, and rank; its opposite is *après*.

E X A M P L E.

Elizabeth reigned before Charles the First.

Elizabeth a régné avant Charles Premier.

He is before me.

Il est avant moi.

Devant is used, when it signifies in English *against*, *over-against*; its opposite is *derrière*.

E X A M P L E.

I live over-against the church.

Je demeure devant l'église.

He preached before the king.

Il prêcha devant le roi.

E X E R C I S E.

I lived in the new street, at the sign of the queen's head, over-against a bookseller's.

I came before you to-day, but I forgive you, because I was after you yesterday.

When

When he came before his judges, he lost all his courage.

Put this before the fire.

Your hat is behind the door.

Dublin was taken by the English in the year 1171; the year before Henry the Second granted to Strongbow the whole province of Leinster, and the year after Henry II. was crowned king of Ireland, at Waterford, the 8th of October.

There are few familiar phrases in which these prepositions are used, which could not be applied to any rule, viz.

To dig very deep in the earth.

Creuser bien avant dans la terre.

When the night was far gone.

Bien avant dans la nuit.

Every body complains of him.

Tout le monde crie après lui.

That engraving is from an original.

Cette gravure est d'après un original.

The dukes have the precedency of the earls.

Les ducs ont le pas sur les comtes.

A back door.

Une porte de derrière.

N. B. This last is used figuratively, to express an evasion.

Dans, en.

These prepositions are translated in English by *in*, 277 *into*, *to*, *within*; it must be observed that *en* is never followed by an article, but *dans* takes always an article after it, except before a possessive pronoun, or such proper names as do not require any: as,

En Angleterre, in England.

Dans le royaume, in the Kingdom.

ist. *En*

- 278 1st. *En* is used before the name of a country whither one is going, or in which one was.

E X A M P L E.

Aller en Italie, to go to Italy.

- 279 2d. *En*, before nouns of time signifies the space of time that is employed in doing a thing; and *dans* the time after the expiration of which something is to be done.

E X A M P L E.

I learned French in ten months.

J'ai appris le François en dix mois.

I shall learn French in ten months hence.

J'apprendrai le François dans dix mois.

E X E R C I S E.

When I was in France, you were in Germany.

If your father is in town, I should be glad to see him.

There is not a man more generous in the kingdom.

The king of England always goes from London to Richmond in two hours and a half.

I shall go to the north in three weeks, and shall come back in three months.

He served in the army of the king of Prussia.

Chez.

- 280 The English expression *at*, followed by a genitive, or to *somebody's house*, is translated by *chez*: as,

At my lord's, *chez monseigneur.*

At my house, *chez moi.*

At their house, *chez eux, &c.*

- 281 It signifies sometimes *among*, *with*.

E X A M-

E X A M P L E.

Among the Romans, *chez les Romains*.

E X E R C I S E.

I was at your house to speak to you concerning your affair, but as you were not at home, I went to your brother's.

He is at my house ; if you wish to see him, come with me.

With the greatest part of Christians one does not perceive a strong persuasion of their religion ; profession is very far amongst them from belief, belief from conviction, and conviction still further from practice.

Amongst the most polite people, women always had authority over their husbands. It was said of the Romans that they commanded all nations, but they obeyed their wives.

Jusque, jusques, jusqu'.

Even to, as far, till, until; the two first are indifferently used before a noun beginning with a consonant, but before a vowel we must use the last.

E X A M P L E.

Vice is seen, even in the church.

On voit le vice jusques dans l'église.

N. B. When *until*, comes before a verb, it is expressed by *jusqu'à ce que*, which governs the conjunctive mood.

E X A M P L E.

I will stay until he comes back.

Je resterai jusqu'à ce qu'il revienne.

The

- 284 The expression *how long*, in oratory, or poetry, is translated by *jusqu'à quand*.

EXAMPLE.

Jusqu'à quand abuserez vous donc de notre patience, ô Catilina!

EXERCISE.

The road is very fine from Dublin to Kilkenny, but from Kilkenny to Cork, it is very bad.

The Swiss regiments did wonders in that action, they sustained the enemy's fire, until the whole army had effected their retreat.

When the king of Denmark set off from Paris, he made presents to all those who had attended him; he extended his generosity even to the servants.

Dedans, within; *dehors*, without; *dessus*, upon; *dessous*, under.

- 285 Those prepositions being preceded by an article, answer to the following English expressions.

Le dedans, the inside.

Le dehors, the outside.

Le dessus, the upper part:

Le dessous, the under part:

We also use it in the following cases.

La croute de dessus, the upper crust.

La croute de dessous, the under crust.

EXERCISE.

He painted the inside of the house this year, but he shall not touch the outside.

That

That is an excellent pye, give me some of the under crust.

Why do not you prefer the upper crust?

Prés, auprès.

Near, those two prepositions are used indifferently, 286 except in the following cases.

1st. *Prés* is always used speaking of time or age; it governs the genitive of the next substantive; and if it is followed by an infinitive, it governs the particle *de* before it.

E X A M P L E.

It is near twelve o'clock.

Il est prés de midi.

He has not near finished his exercise.

Il n'est pas prés d'avoir fini son thème.

2d. *Prés* signifies also, almost: as,

287

He has been almost five years in France.

Il a été prés de trois ans en France.

3d. It may be used to express *save, excepting, &c.* 288 and in that case it comes after its regimen, which is then preceded by the particle *à*.

E X A M P L E.

He paid me all, excepting ten guineas.

Il m'a tout payé à dix guinées prés.

4th. We use *auprès* to express domestic or servile 289 attachment, or some honourable employment.

EXAMPLE.

My brother is with the duke's children.

Mon frere est auprès des enfans du duc.

Meaning as governor, servant, &c.

The ambassador of the king of France, to his Britannic majesty.

L'ambassadeur du roi de France, auprès de sa majesté Britannique.

290 5th. *Auprès* is used as a mark of comparison.

EXAMPLE.

He is rich, but nothing to his brother.

Il est riche, mais rien auprès de son frere.

291 6th. *Auprès* is used also to express the interest one person has with another.

EXAMPLE.

He is in favour with the king.

Il est bien auprès du roi.

EXERCISE.

Sit near the fire, you must be cold, for it is a hard frost.

The earth is but a mere point compared with the whole of creation.

I met him near the new garden.

Come near me if you please.

Do you know any one who is well with my father? Speak to him, to obtain me that favour.

What is Rome now, to what it was in the time of Cato and Cæsar?

His house is next to mine.

He

He asked me to be with his only son, who was pretty much of my age.

N. B. After any of the adverbs, *plus, bien, trop*, 292 *assez*, and after *si*, we use *près*, and not *auprès*: as,

You are too near the fire.

Vous êtes trop près du feu.

I am near enough.

Je suis assez près.

Par.

The literal English of this preposition is *by*: as, 293

By this you see.

Par ceci vous voyez.

But we must observe,

1st. When it denotes weather, it answers to the 294 English expression *in*.

E X A M P L E.

We set out in fair weather.

Nous partimes par un beau tems.

2d. *Par* is used before infinitives, where beginning 295 and ending is understood.

E X A M P L E.

It began by a trifling quarrel, and ended with shaking off the yoke.

Elle commença par une querelle de rien, et finit par secouer le joug.

3d. A division or distribution of people, time, 296 place, or any expression of prices, commonly rendered in English by *à, each, or every*, is expressed in French

R

by

by *par*, and the noun that comes after does not take any article.

E X A M P L E.

They got fifty pounds a man for their share.

Ils eurent cinquante livres Sterling par homme pour leur part.

297 4th. *Through, about, by*, are expressed also in French by *par* : as,

He passed through the castle-yard.

Il est passé par la cour du chateau.

E X E R C I S E.

Where is he gone in such a rain as this?

He is not happy, but when he walks about his domains.

The general was so pleased, that he gave a guinea to each soldier.

He is an excellent workman, he earns three crowns a week, sometimes more.

He spends two guineas a week.

The price of a post-chaise from Dublin to Cork, is ten pence a mile.

In the reign of Louis V. the parliament of France met only once a year, and there was but one; now there are ten sitting the whole year.

P o u r .

298 (*For*) In French when we make a choice between two things of the like nature, but different in some of their circumstances, we express it in familiar discourse by repeating the noun or the infinitive expressing it, and placing *pour* between; this sort of expression cannot be rendered in English but by a Periphrasis, or circumlocation.

E X A M-

EXAMPLE.

Since he must have an ugly wife, he should take the rich one.

Femme laide pour femme laide il devoit prendre la riche.

EXERCISE.

When a man must die, it is better to die by a cannon ball.

If they must be slaves, it is better to be so to one tyrant than to twenty.

Sans.

This preposition, which takes generally the participle in English after it, governs in French either the infinitive mood of the verb, or the substantive that conveys the same sense.

EXAMPLE.

He died without suffering.

Il est mort sans souffrir.

Il est mort sans peines.

EXERCISE.

I saw him this morning, he accosted me without speaking a word, and left me without taking his leave of me.

Though the enemy were superior in numbers, our general ranged his army in order of battle, without fearing any danger.

He was three months without writing to me.

He sat at table without eating or drinking.

à travers, au travers.

- 300 *Through, cross*; the difference between those two prepositions is, that the former governs the accusative case, and the latter the genitive.

EXAMPLE.

He ran him through the body.

Il lui passa son épée au travers du corps.

He flew across fields and forests.

Il se sauva à travers les champs et les forêts.

REMARK.

- 301 There are many prepositions in the English language that are not particularly expressed in French, but are comprehended in the very verb, which they are joined to; the principals are the following to which an example is annexed.

AWAY { to take away, *emporter.*
 { to run away, *s'enfuir.*

BACK, { to come back, *revenir.*
 { to send back, *renvoyer.*

AGAIN, { to read again, *relire.*
 { to find again, *retrouver.*

- 302 N. B. *Again* and *back* are generally rendered in French by placing *re* before the verb.

UP, to go up, *monter.*

DOWN, to go down, *descendre.*

OFF, { to pull off, *arracher.*
 { to carry off, *enlever.*

AWAY, to take away, *emporter.*

UP,

UP,	{	to take up arms, <i>prendre les armes.</i>
		to take up the cudgel, <i>prendre parti.</i>
		to take up a thief, <i>arrêter un voleur.</i>
IN,		to come in, <i>entrer.</i>
OUT,		to go out, <i>sortir.</i>
ABOARD,	{	to embark aboard } <i>s'embarquer à bord</i>
		a ship, } <i>d'un vaisseau.</i>

Both, is commonly left out in French, when it comes before two nouns joined by the conjunction *et*. 303

EXAMPLE.

She is both young and handsome.

Elle est jeune et belle.

In case the learner meets with such prepositions, he must peruse with attention his dictionary, and reading over the column he cannot fail to find the proper word to express it.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

On Prépositions.

In the year 1440, printing was invented: who the first inventor of this art was, is a problem long disputed among the learned; both John Mantle of Strasbourg, and Faustus of Mentz, are the persons to whom this honour is ascribed; but it is generally allowed to be *about* this year that the first book appeared in print.

Towards the end of the year 1604 a great plague broke out in Dublin, which carried off numbers.

The Spaniards have made immense discoveries *in* the new world, the third of that continent is theirs; there are *on* their rivers ports that have not yet been discovered, and *in* their mountains nations which are unknown to them. They say the sun rises and sets *in* their king's dominions; but we must

observe that in its course it meets only desolate countries, and barren deserts.

There is a canal that runs from the Mediterranean Sea to the Ocean *across* the most flourishing part of France, it is called the Canal of Languedoc.

Answer me *without* hesitating.

304 This preposition denotes,

1st, The names of cities where one lives, or whither one is going, as

He is in Paris. She is going to London.

Il est à Paris. Elle va à Londres.

305 2dly, It denotes the matter, instruments, tools used in working, instead of *in* or *with*, as

She works at her needle.

Elle travaille à l'aiguille.

He paints with oil.

Il peint à l'huile.

N. B. We say *peindre en pastelles*, to paint with crayons.

306 3dly, Denotes some particular manner in which something is done, as

She is dressed after the French fashion.

Elle est habillée à la Française.

To go on foot or on horseback.

Aller à pié ou à cheval.

307 4thly, Instead of *on*, as

A main droite.

On the right.

A main gauche.

On the left.

308 5thly, To express the quality and price of things.

EXAMPLE

Eighteen shillings cloth.

Du drap à dix huit shelings l'aune.

Four threads stockings.

Des bas à quatre fils.

6thly, *A* denotes time expressed by *at*, *in*, *as*

309

In London they dine at one o'clock, and in Dublin at four.

A Londres on dine à une heure, et à Dublin à quatre.

7thly, The English language has this peculiarity: 310 that it often forms one word out of two, the first of which expresses the manner, form, use of the thing expressed by the second, as a branched candlestick, dining-room; to translate such words in French, we write the second first, and then bring the preposition *à* followed by the other noun without an article, as *un chandelier à bras: une chambre à manger.*

N. B. Sometimes it is an infinitive that follows the preposition *à*, as may be seen in the second of those examples.

8thly, When an infinitive denotes what is proper 311 to be done, we place the preposition *à* before it in French, which is translated in English by *worth* or *fit*, as

A fruit fit for keeping.

Un fruit bon à garder.

EXERCISE.

In the west of France there is not a water-mill to be seen, they use wind-mills in general.

They are very fond of living after the English fashion.

I went

I went in a shop to-day, where I saw muslin at ten shillings a yard.

I get up every day at six o'clock, and I go to bed at ten.

I lived four years in Paris, but I shall go to Rome next year.

Any man who is in Turkey must live after the Turkish fashion, and in Holland after the Dutch.

He wears a broad brimmed hat, a long skirt-coat, and square toe shoes.

The invention of fire-arms was found out by the Chinese long before we had a knowledge of them in Europe.

De.

This preposition is used,

- 311 1st, To express the quality of a person or thing, the stuff of which a thing is made, and this is construed in English by placing the name of that matter first, which with the next forms a compound word.

E X A M P L E.

A silver-cup.

Une coupe d'argent.

A gold snuff-box.

Une tabatiere d'or.

- 312 2dly, To express the means or cause by which something happens, or the manner in which something is done.

E X A M P L E.

They died with hunger.

Ils sont morts de faim.

She dances very awkwardly.

Elle danse de bien mauvaise grace.

E X E R-

EXERCISE.

There is a sect, the followers of which live on vegetables all the year.

I bought yesterday three brass candlesticks, and one dozen of china plates.

They may hurt us in a thousand different manners.

The general behaved in a very imprudent manner.

He leaped with joy, when he heard that happy news.

Will you buy me a pearl neck-lace?

She has a beautiful pair of diamond ear-rings.

CHAP. XXIV.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

WE have spoken before of the conjunctions ³¹³ that govern the conjunctive mood; we must observe that there are also a few which govern the infinitive mood; those end by the particle *de*: as, *afin de*, *de peur de*, &c.

RULE I.

In a compound sentence which has at the beginning ³¹⁴ the conjunctions *si*, *peut*, *etre*, *quand*; or any other of which *que* makes a part: as, *afinque*, *quoique*, &c. we do not repeat the conjunction, but place *que* at the beginning of the second member of the sentence.

EXAMPLE.

If my brother comes and leaves a paper for me.

Si mon frere vient et qu'il laisse un papier pour moi.

Whether it rains or snows, I will go out.

Soit qu'il pleuve ou qu'il neige, je veux sortir.

It

- 315 It must be observed that if *si* is in the beginning of the sentence, the verb that comes after *que* must be in the conjunctive mood: as,

If he comes and wants to speak to me.

S'il vient et qu'il veuille me parler.

- 316 But if there is any other conjunction at the beginning of the sentence, the verb that comes after *que* in the second part must be in the indicative or conjunctive, according to the mood that is governed by the conjunction.

E X A M P L E.

Though you sing and dance well, you are not an accomplished lady.

Quoique vous chantiez et que vous dansiez bien, vous n'etes pas une dame accomplie.

When he accosted me and saluted me.

Quand il m'aborda et qu'il me salua.

E X E R C I S E.

Languages are a most useful part of education, because they enable us to travel in foreign countries, and open our mind by the reading of original authors.

As long as the Romans loved virtue, and preferred an honest poverty to riches, they were an invincible people.

When Rome had annihilated all nations, and when she was conquered by her own armies, it seemed as if the earth produced new ones, in order to destroy her mighty empire.

Would to God that I may see him, and that he grant me the favour that I have to ask him!

Since they are unanimous amongst themselves, and they have acquired so powerful an ally, they cannot fail of succeeding.

As

As soon as you have dined and drank a glass of wine, come to me; for I have something to say to you.

Though I heard that news before, and you confirm it, yet I have some difficulty to believe it, because it is very extraordinary, and contradicts what we heard before.

She does not make any progress in the study of the French language, because she is idle, and prefers the public gardens to her books.

R U L E II.

The conjunction *si* expressing *if*, requires the verb 317 in the imperfect of the indicative mood, if it is in the conditional in English.

E X A M P L E.

I should be glad if he would come.

Je serois bien aise s'il venoit.

But when *si* signifies *whether*, we leave the verb in 318 the conditional tense.

E X A M P L E.

Do you know whether he would be glad of my visit?

Savez vous s'il seroit aise de ma visite.

E X E R C I S E.

You would oblige me greatly if you could lend me five guineas.

I should be glad if I could speak French with ease and propriety.

I do not know whether he would grant me that favour if I should ask him.

I think I should not find him at home if I should go too early.

R U L E

R U L E III.

Whether, or either, and or, being in the same English sentence, are translated into French by soit and ou.

E X A M P L E.

Whether he will or not I shall go.

Soit qu'il le veuille ou non j'irai.

He did it either by fear or gratitude.

Il le fit soit par crainte ou par reconnaissance.

R U L E IV.

- 230 The same conjunctions *whether* and *or*, may be expressed by *soit que* repeated.

E X A M P L E.

Whether she sings or dances she is lovely.

Soit qu'elle danse, soit qu'elle chante elle est aimable.

E X E R C I S E.

Whether she is rich or poor I do not care, for she has virtue.

Whether it is true or no, I do not know.

R U L E V.

- 321 It is the idiom of the English language to leave out the conjunction *that* in the course of the sentence ; but we must express it in French ; we therefore shall observe that a noun or pronoun being between two verbs in a French sentence must be preceded by *que*.

E X A M -

EXAMPLE.

He that boasts of his ancestors, confesses *he* hath no virtue of his own.

Celui qui se fait un mérite de ses ancêtres, avoue qu'il ne possède aucune vertu en lui même.

EXERCISE.

You told me she wanted to speak to me, I think I shall be at home between two and three o'clock, tell him I shall be glad to see him.

He thinks he speaks French with great propriety, but I assure you he does not understand the first principles of the language.

I own to you his behaviour has much surprised me, I did not think a man could be guilty of such ingratitude.

His servant said he was not at home, but I think I saw him at the dining-room window.

CHAP. XXV.

Remarks on the Idiom of the French Language.

REMARK I.

THE verb *to be* preceding in an English sentence, the present tense of the infinitive mood, is translated in French by the correspondent tense and person of the verb *devoir*. 322

EXAMPLE.

He *is* to dine with me to-day; will you *be* of the party?

Il doit diner avec moi aujourd'hui ; voulez vous en etre ?

He was to write to me, but he did not.

Il devoit m'écrire, mais il ne l'a pas fait.

E X E R C I S E.

Am I to bear his impertinence, or is he to insult me with impunity ?

I am to go to the castle to night, if you chuse I will give you a place in my carriage.

I am to dine with him to-day; and after dinner, he, his sister and I are to go to the play together.

R E M A R K II.

343 *How*, coming in English before an adverb or an adjective, is translated in French by *que*, and the construction of the sentence may be observed in the following

E X A M P L E.

How glad I am to see you in good health !

Que je suis aise de vous voir en bonne santé !

How well that lady dances !

Que cette dame danse bien !

E X E R C I S E.

How happy are the people who have a good king to govern them ! and how happy is the king who is beloved by his subjects !

How dreadful are the effects of a civil war ! how cruel it is to see brothers fighting against brothers, deaf to all sentiments of humanity.

How well does that author know the art of moving the passions !

R E-

REMARK III.

Speaking of any body's health we use the reflective verb, *se porter* which we put in the same tense and person as the verb *to be* or *to do* is in English. 324

EXAMPLE.

How do you do?

How are you?

} *Comment vous portez vous ?*

I was very ill yesterday ; but *I am* better at present.

Je me portois fort mal hier ; mais je me porte mieux maintenant.

N. B. We must observe here that this politeness, so peculiar to the French, makes them use in their language, manners of expressing themselves which foreigners must attend to, though strange they may appear to them at first ; one of the principal is, amongst well bred people, never to mention any body in a familiar conversation, especially to a friend or relation of the person spoken of, without introducing *monsieur, madame, or mademoiselle.*

EXAMPLE.

How is your father ?

Comment se porte monsieur votre pere ?

Is your brother in town ?

Monsieur votre frere est il en ville ?

I saw your mother this morning.

J'ai vu madame votre mere ce matin.

They say your sister is going to be married.

On dit que mademoiselle votre sœur va se marier.

E X E R C I S E.

I heard yesterday your brother was not well, how is he now?

Your sister told me you have not been well, is it true?

I am pretty well, but I should be better if the weather was not so hot.

R E M A R K IV.

- 325 We meet sometimes, in the course of an English sentence, with the present of the infinitive *to be* preceded by a nominative. The conjunction *que, that,* must be introduced in the French sentence.

E X A M P L E.

Do you believe him *to be* an honest man?

Do you believe that he is an honest man?

Croyez vous qu'il soit honnête homme?

I suspect that letter *to be* forged.

Je soupçonne que cette lettre est forgée.

E X E R C I S E.

The legislator of Lacedemon judged riches to be the source of luxury, and of course the destruction of an empire; he therefore thought it necessary for his people to be in a salutary poverty.

I should fear the event to be fatal to us, if I did not know the solidity of our undertaking.

R E M A R K V.

- 326 When two or three verbs immediately follow one another those coming after the first must be in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

E X A M-

EXAMPLE

Come and see my sister dance.

Venez voir danser ma sœur.

EXERCISE.

Will you come and breakfast with me to-morrow?

If we are willing to improve in our study, we must pay a great attention to the lessons of our masters.

He thinks to frighten me by his threatenings.

REMARK VI.

If the superlative is followed in the English sentence by the particle *in*, we strike off that particle in French, and we put the noun that follows it in the genitive case.

EXAMPLE.

It is the finest weather *in* the world.

Il fait le plus beau tems du monde.

EXERCISE.

She is the most beautiful girl in the whole city.

He is the bravest officer in the king's army.

I have the prettiest villa in the neighbourhood of Dublin; it is in a beautiful situation, and commands a view of the bay, which is one of the finest in Europe.

That nobleman has the finest collection of paintings in the kingdom.

REMARK VII.

- 328 Notwithstanding what has been said (41) we must observe here that when the particle *with* does not imply union, it is translated by *de*, if the substantive that comes after it has no article before it in the English sentence.

EXAMPLE.

The city is encompassed *with* walls.

La ville est entourée de murailles.

EXERCISE.

The soldiers were exhausted with fatigue when the enemy appeared.

This house is beautiful, the rooms are adorned with paintings of the best artists; the gardens embellished with statues; in short every thing shews the taste of the master.

He was overcome with reproaches from all his friends.

His cellar is filled with wines of the best quality.

REMARK VIII.

- 329 Speaking of the age of somebody, we use the verb *avoir* in French, and place it in the same tense and person as *to be* is in English.

EXAMPLE.

How old are you? how old is he?

We construe in French thus:

What age have you?

Quel âge avez vous?

What age has he?

Quel âge a t'il?

I am

I am fifteen.

J'ai quinze ans.

He is past twenty.

Il a vingt ans passés.

EXERCISE.

How old is your brother? I think he is past sixteen.

No, he is not fifteen yet.

How old do you think I am?

You are twenty years older than I am.

She would be fifteen the twentieth of the next month, if she had lived.

REMARK IX.

We use the reflexive verbs *se nommer*, or *s'appeller*, 330 speaking of names.

EXAMPLE.

What is his name?

Comment s'appelle t'il?

What is your name?

Comment vous appelez vous?

EXERCISE.

His name is W—, I know his family extremely well.

What is that gentleman's name?

My name is A—, I come from your brother, who lives in the county of Wicklow.

REMARK X.

We use the verbs passive as seldom as possible in 331 French, we have seen before (120,) how we avoid it in some cases; we shall observe here that in other instances we make a reflexive verb of the verb that is passive in English.

EXAM-

E X A M P L E.

Men are found who prefer riches to virtue; but others are seen who prefer virtue to the greatest opulence.

Il se trouve des hommes qui préfèrent les richesses à la vertu; mais il s'en trouve d'autres qui préfèrent la vertu à la plus grande opulence.

E X E R C I S E.

Horses are sold at that fair; if you want one, I advise you to go.

Silks of all kinds are manufactured in that flourishing city.

All sorts of India wares are sold in that shop.

Events of great importance are found in the Roman history.

C H A P. XXVI.

Of the Use of the Particle que.

THIS particle is met with so often, and in so many different significations, that a learner is really distressed to distinguish the different constructions of it, whenever he finds it promiscuously intermixed in the discourse; for that reason it is strongly recommended to pay a proper attention to the following remarks, which will, upon a close examination, elucidate the difficulty.

Que, is used for *cependant* (yet, as yet): *Il me verraît périr qu'il n'en seroit pas touché.* He would see me die, yet he would not be concerned at it.

Que, is used instead of *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, (unless, before, without); as *Je ne serai point content que je ne le sache.* I shall never be contented unless I know it.

Que

Que, is the accusative of the pronoun relative *qui*, for all genders and numbers: as, *L'homme, ou la femme que vous voyez*. The man or woman whom you see.

Que, is the dative and genitive of the pronouns relative and interrogative *qui* and *quoi*, standing for *de qui*, *de quoi*, *dont*, *à qui*, *à quoi*, for both genders and numbers: as, *C'est de vous qu'on parle*. It is you they are speaking of; *C'est à vous qu'on s'adresse*. To you they make application.

Que, is a particle, which most conjunctions are composed of: as, *Afin que*, That; *De sorte que*, So that; *Puisque*, Since; *Quoique*, Although, &c.

Que, is the accusative of the pronoun interrogative *quoi* (what): as *Que dites-vous?* What do you say?

Que, is a conjunction, used in the second part of a period, instead of repeating the conjunction *si*, expressed at the head of the first sentence; and this *que* governs the conjunctive: as, *S'il le souhaite, & que vous le vouliez*, if he desires it, and you will have it so.

Que, is used instead of *afin que*, (that, to the end that): as, *Aprachez que je vous baise*, Draw near that I may kiss you.

Que, is used in the middle of a sentence for *depuis que* (since): as, *Il n'y a qu'une heure qu'il est parti*. It is but an hour since he is gone.

Que, is used in the middle of a sentence in place of the conjunctions *Comme*, *lorsque* (as, when) tho' they are not expressed before: as, *Nous partimes, qu'il pleuvoit à verse*. We set out at a time when it did rain, as fast as it could pour.

Que, is used for *jusqu'à ce que*, (till, until): as, *attendez qu'il vienne*, stay till or until he comes.

Que, after a noun of time, signifies *quand*, (when): as, *Le jour qu'il partit*. The day when he set out.

Que, after *tel*, or an adjective preceded by the adverb *si*, is translated by *as*: as, *Je ne suis pas si fou que de le croire*. I am not such a fool as to believe it.

Que,

Que, is used in lieu of *de peur que* (lest or for fear of) : as, *N'approchez pas de ce chien qu'il ne vous morde.* Do not go near that dog, lest he should bite you.

Que, being used in the beginning of a sentence—with the conjunctive, denotes wishing or imprecation : as, *Que Dieu vous bénisse*, God bless you ; *Que je meure si j'en fais quelque chose*, Let me die if I know any thing of it.

Que, is used in the place of *si* or *dèsque* (if, as soon as) in the beginning of a sentence : as, *Qu'il boive de la bière, il est malade à la mort*, If or When, or As soon as he drinks beer, he is sick to death.

Que, is also used in the beginning of a sentence with the conjunctive, to denote, by an exclamation, one's surprise, aversion, and reluctancy of something : in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que* : as, *Que j'agisse contre ma conscience !* Must I do a thing, or How can I do a thing against my conscience !

Que, is used for *de sorte que* (so that) : as, *Si vous n'êtes sage, je vous étrillerai que rien n'y manquera*, If you are not good, I will beat you soundly.

Que, is used before the second verb of a sentence beginning with the conjunction *à peine*, which it serves to compose (scarce, hardly than) : as, *A peine, eut-il achevé de parler qu'il expira*, He had hardly done speaking, but he expired.

Que, is used in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation with the indicative, and is rendered into English several ways, according to the nature of the sentence ; for if the verb coming after *que* is followed by another verb, *que* is englished by *how much* : as, *Que vous aimez à parler !* How much you like to talk !—If the verb coming after *que* is followed by an adjective only, *que* is englished by *how* only before the adjective : as, *Qu'il fait crotté !* How dirty it is ! *Qu'elle est aimable !* How amiable she is !—Sometimes the exclamation

clamation, or admiration, is expressed without any verb : as, *Que de plaisir & de peine tout à la fois !* How much pleasure and trouble at once.—Sometimes also *que* comes after the noun, especially if indignation meets with admiration : as, *Le malheureux qu'il est !* What a wretch he is ! *L'indigne action que la sienne !* O the unworthy action of his ! *Les beaux livres que vous avez !* What fine books have you got !

Que, (than) is used before the noun or adjective following an adverb comparative : as, *Le mari est plus raisonnable que la femme*, The husband is more reasonable than the wife.

Que, in the middle of a sentence beginning with the impersonal *c'est*, is only explanatory : as, *C'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu*, Gaming is a dangerous passion.

Que, (let) denotes the third persons of the imperative : as, *Qu'il parle*, Let him speak ; *Qu'ils rient*, Let them laugh.

Que, is used between two verbs, to determine and specify the sense of the first. This conjunction is sometimes englished by *that*, but most times left out and understood : as, *Je vous assure que cela est ainsi*, I assure you that it is so. *Je doute que cela soit ainsi*, I doubt whether it is so or no.

Que, being immediately preceded by the impersonal *c'est*, signifies *parceque*, as *C'est que je ne savois pas que*.—It is *or* it was, *because* I did not know that : — And when a word comes between *c'est* and *que*, *c'est que* is a redundancy : as, *C'est alors que je vis*, It was then I saw, *or only* then I saw.

Que, after the impersonal *il y a* with a noun denoting time, is only explanatory : as, *Il y a dix ans que je l'aime*, I have loved her these ten years.

Que, after *autre* and *autrement* signifies *than* : as, *Il est tout autre que vous ne disiez*, He is quite another man than you said.

Que,

Que, in the middle of a sentence, but preceded by *ne* with some words between, signifies *seulement* (only, but, nothing but, &c.): as, *Le Roi n'a en vue que le bien public*, The King has no other view but, or only aims at the public good.

Que, beginning a sentence of interrogation, and followed by the negative *ne* only, stands for *pourquoi* (why): as, *Que ne parlez vous?* Why don't you speak?

Que, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes that the action signified by the second verb began some few minutes, a very little while, one moment before, that it does or did just or just now begin, and is expressed by *just* or *just now*: as, *Nous ne faisons que de commencer*, We do but begin, We have but just begun; *Il ne faisoit que d'achever quand*.—He had just finished when—

Que, in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation, and followed by *ne*, denotes only a wish and a great desire: as, *Que ne fais-je déjà, aux portes de Valence!* Would I were already at the gates of Valencia!

Que, preceded by *ne*, and followed by the infinitive *faire*, without a preposition, signifies *nothing*; or *to need not*, if *faire* is followed by another infinitive with *de*: as, *Je n'ai que faire de cela*, I have nothing to do with that; *Je n'a que faire d'y aller*, I need not go there.

Où, after a noun of place, signifies *où* (where): as *C'est à la cour qu'on apprend les manières polies*. It is at court one learns, or where one learns politeness, or polite ways of behaving.



PART II.
RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES,
SELECTED
FROM THE BEST AUTHORS,
AND
PARTICULARLY ADAPTED
TO THE
RULES OF THE SYNTAX.



INTRODUCTION.

AFTER having carefully attended to the rules included in the Syntax, and having singly put them to practice by the Exercises joined to them, the difficulty lies in applying them whenever they are met with promiscuously intermixed : it cannot be overcome at once ; and it is by degrees that a learner may expect to attain that perfection : The following Exercises I conceive to be of the greatest use, being extracted from the best authors and written in an easy stile : they will furnish a pleasing opportunity to examine the different circumstances, in which the rules are to be applied, and especially they will intirely clear up that nice difference which the French language places between the imperfect and preter-perfect tenses.—The figures that precede the words refer to the number of the rule one must apply to in the translation ; but it is strongly recommended to have recourse to them as seldom as possible, and use one self to practise them by dint of memory and application.

 RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES,

SELECTED FROM

THE BEST AUTHORS, &c.

PYTHAGORAS, during his residence in India, (209) learned, as all the world knows, at the school of the Gymnosophists, the language of beasts and that of plants. Walking one day in a field near the sea-shore, (210) he heard these words : How unhappy am I to be born an herb ! scarce have I attained two inches in height before a devouring monster, a horrid animal, tramples (43) me under his feet ; his jaw is armed with a row of sharp scythes, with which he cuts (43) me, tears me, and then swallows me. Man calls (76) this monster a sheep. I do not think (321) there (219) is in the whole creation a more abominable creature.

Pythagoras (209) advanced a few steps : he met with an oyster that (235) was yawning upon a small rock. He had not yet embraced the admirable law by which (156) we are forbidden to eat our own likeness. He was (235) going to swallow the oyster, when it uttered (76) these soothing words : O nature, how happy is the herb, (87) which is like thy work ! when it is cut it regenerates and is immortal ; and we poor oysters, in vain are we (238) defended by a double buckler ; villains eat (43) us by dozens at their breakfast, and it is over with us for ever. (99) What a dreadful

destiny is that of an oyster, and how barbarous is man!

Pythagoras (209) shuddered; he felt the enormity of the crime (88) he was going to commit: he weeping asked pardon of the oyster, and replaced (43) him very snug upon the rock.

Whilst he (201) was returning to the city, in a profound meditation at this adventure, he (210) observed some spiders that (235) were eating flies, swallows that were eating spiders, sparrow-hawks that were eating swallows. None of these folks, said he, are philosophers.

Pythagoras upon his entrance was (238) hurtled, bruised, and thrown down by a multitude of beggars who ran in crying, Well done, he (203) deserved it. Who? what? said Pythagoras, getting up; whilst the people continued running and crying, we shall have high fun in seeing (43) them broil.

Pythagoras imagined they (202) were speaking of lentiles, or some other kind of vegetable—but he was quite mistaken—they meant two poor Indians. O! said Pythagoras, these are doubtless two great philosophers, who are tired of their lives; they are desirous (161) of regenerating under another form; (126) there is a pleasure (173) in changing the place of one's abode, though one may be badly lodged—there is no (173) disputing taste.

He (201) went on with the mob (151) as far as the public square, where he saw the great pile of wood lighted, and opposite a bench, (87) which was called a tribunal; upon this bench judges were (238) seated, each of whom held a (18) cow's tail in his hand, and they (201) had caps upon their heads, which greatly (203) resembled the two ears of that animal which formerly (210) carried Silenus, when he came into the country with Bacchus, after (233) having crossed the Erythrean sea * dry-footed, and stopped the course of
the

* A pied sec.

the sun and moon, as it is very faithfully related in the Orphics.

There was amongst these judges an honest man well known to Pythagoras. The sage of India explained to the sage of Samos the nature of the festival the Indian people were going to assist at.

The two Indians, said he, are not at all desirous (161) of being burned ; my grave brethren have condemned (43) them to that punishment, one for (188) having said that the substance of Xaca is not the substance of Brama ; and the other for (188) having suspected that we please the Supreme Being by virtue, without (233) holding, at the point of death, a cow by the tail, because, said he, we may be virtuous at all times, and because (118) one cannot always meet with a cow just as (118) one may have occasion for her. The good women of the city (238) were so terrified with two such heretical propositions, that they would not leave the judges in peace, till they ordered the execution of these two unfortunate men.

Pythagoras judged, that from the herb up to the man (126) there were many causes of uneasiness. He, (44) however, made the judges and even the devotees listen to reason, which never (210) happened but at that one time.

He afterwards (209) went and preached toleration at Crotona ; but one of his adversaries set fire to his house ; he was burned—the man who had saved two Indians from the flames—Let (78) those escape who can.

Character of the Welsh in the time of Henry II.

WE are told, that not only the nobility and gentry, but the whole people of Wales, were universally addicted to arms ; that they (198) gave no attention to commerce, navigation, or mechanical

arts, and but little to agriculture ; depending for sustenance chiefly on their cattle ; and disliking, or rather disdaining, any labour, except the toils of war and (234) hunting, in which from their infancy, they trained themselves up with unwearied alacrity ; (25) military exercises, or the severest fatigues in the woods and mountains, being their constant diversions in time of peace. Their bodies (199) were naturally not robust ; but, by this manner of life, they (210) became exceedingly active, hardy, and dextrous in the use of their arms, and ever ready to take them up when occasion required it. To fight for their country, and lose their lives in defence of its honour and liberty, was their chief pride : but to die in their beds they (198) thought disgraceful.

A very honourable testimony was given to their valour by King Henry the second, in a letter to the (10) Greek Emperor, Emanuel Comnenus. (76) This prince having desired that an account might be sent (47) him of all that was most remarkable in the island of Britain, Henry, in answer to that request, noticed, among other particulars, the extraordinary courage and fierceness of the Welsh, “ who (199) were not afraid (156) to fight unarmed with enemies armed at all points, willingly shedding their blood in the cause of their country, and purchasing glory at the expence of their lives.” But these words (266) must not be taken in too strict a sense, as if they (198) had absolutely worn no armour : for they used small and light targets, which were commonly made of hides, and sometimes of iron : but, except their breasts, which (201) these guarded, all the rest of their bodies was left defenceless ; nor did they cover their heads with casques, or helmets ; so that in comparison of the English, or other nations of Europe, they might be called “ unarmed.” Their offensive weapons were arrows, and long pikes, or spears, which were of great
use

use against cavalry ; and these they, (44) occasionally, either pushed with or darted ; in which exercise the whole nation was wonderfully expert ; but, more especially the men of north-Wales, who (198) had (31) pikes so strong and well pointed, that they would pierce through an (20) iron coat of mail ; but those of South Wales, and particularly the province of Guent, or Monmouth, which was then a part of that kingdom, were accounted the best archers, not being inferior, in the use of the long bow, to the Normans themselves.

The common people (201) fought on foot ; but some of the nobility began now (169) to ride upon horses bred in their own country, which were high-mettled, and swift, but not very strong : and even these gentlemen would frequently dismount, both in combating, and when they (198) fled ; the nature of their country, (151) as well as their discipline, being better adapted to foot than horse. Their first onset was terrible ; but, if stoutly resisted, they (44) soon gave ground and could (136) never be rallied ; in which they resemble other barbarous nations, and particularly the Britons and Celts, their forefathers. Yet, though (236) defeated and dispersed, they were not subdued ; but presently returned to make war again upon (82) those from whom they had fled, by ambuscades and night marches, or by sudden assaults, when they were least expected ; in which their agility, spirit, and impetuosity, made up what they wanted in weight and firmness : so that, although they were easily overcome in a battle by regular troops, they were with great difficulty vanquished in a war. The same vivacity (87) which (203) animated their hearts inspired their tongues. They (199) were of quick and sharp wit ; naturally eloquent, and ready in speaking, without any awe or concern, before their superiors, or in the public assembly. But from this fire in their
temper

temper they were all very passionate, vindictive, and sanguinary in their resentments : nor was their revenge only sudden and violent, when they received any personal injury or affront, or while the sting of it was recent in their minds ; but it was frequently carried back, by a false sense of honour, even to very remote and traditional quarrels, in which any of their family had been ever engaged. For not only the nobles and gentry but even the lowest among them, (198) had each by heart his own genealogy, together with which he retained a constant remembrance of every injury, disgrace, or loss (88) his forefathers had suffered, and thought it would be degeneracy (130) not to resent it as personal to himself : So that the vanity of this people, with regard to their families served (157) to perpetuate implacable feuds, and a kind of civil war among private men ; besides the dissensions (88) it excited among their kings and chief lords, which (210) proved the destruction of their national union, and consequently broke their national strength.

They (199) were in their nature very light and inconstant, easily impelled to any undertaking, even the most wicked and dangerous, and as easily introduced to quit it again ; desirous of change, and not to be held by any bonds of faith or oaths, which they (198) violated without scruple or sense of shame, both in public and private transactions. To plunder and rob was scarce accounted dishonourable among them, even against their own countrymen, much less against foreigners. The people in general, and more especially their princes and nobles, gave themselves up to excessive lewdness ; but were remarkably temperate in eating and drinking, constantly fasting till evening, and then making a sober meal ; unless when they were entertained at the tables of foreigners, where they indulged themselves immoderately both in liquor and food, passing at once from their habit of abstinence

to.

to the most riotous and brutal excess : but, nevertheless, when they came home, they returned with great ease to their former course of life ; and none of their nobles were led by the example of the English to run out of their fortunes by a profuseness of table. No kind of luxury was yet introduced into their manner of living ; not even a decent convenience, or neatness. They seemed to be proud (161) of not wanting those delicacies which other nations are proud of enjoying. Their kings indeed, and a few of their principal nobles, had built some castles in imitation of the English : but most of their gentry still continued (169) to dwell in huts made of wattles, and situated in solitudes, by the sides of the woods, as most convenient for (234) hunting and pasture, or for a retreat in time of war. They had no gardens, nor orchards, nor any improvements about their dwellings, which they commonly (198) changed every year, and removed to other places (as the Britons and Celts, their ancestors, had been accustomed to do) for the sake of fresh pasture and a new supply of game.

Their furniture was (151) as simple and mean as their houses, such as might answer the mere necessities of gross and uncivilized nature. The only elegance among them was (25) music, which they were so fond (91) of, that in every family there generally (250) were some who played (192) on the harp ; and (25) skill in that instrument was valued by them more than all other knowledge. (85) This greatly contributed to keep up that cheerfulness, (87) which (199) was more universal and constant in the Welsh than in the Saxons or Normans.

Notwithstanding their poverty, they were so hospitable that every (18) man's house was open to all ; and thus no wants were felt by the most indigent, nor (126) was there a beggar in the nation. When any stranger or traveller, (201) came to a house, he (201) used no other

other ceremony, than at his first entrance (156) to deliver his arms into the hands of the master, who thereupon offered to wash (71) his feet; which if he accepted, it was understood to signify his intention (231) of staying there all night; and none who did so was refused. (107) Whatever the number or quality of their guests might be, the master and mistress of the house waited on them, and would not sit down at table with them, or taste any food, till they had supped. The fire (200) was placed in the middle of the room, on each side of which (200) was spread a coarse bed of hemp over a thin mat of rushes, where the whole family and their guests slept together, without even a curtain betwixt them. (71) Their feet lay always next to the fire, which, burning all night, supplied the want of (20) bed cloaths, for they had no covering (140) but the cloaths (88) they wore in the day.

(259) It was customary among them to receive in a morning large companies of young men, who following no occupation (140) but arms, whenever they were not in action (203) strolled over the country, and entered into any house that they (201) found in their way, where they were entertained, till the evening, with the music of the harp and conversation with the young women of the family; upon which Giraldus Cambrensis makes this remark, that of all the nations in the universe none were more jealous of their women than the Irish, or less than the Welsh. In other respects their manners so nearly (197) agreed, when that author wrote, as to discover the marks of a (10) Celtic origin common to both.

(118) One is surprised in observing how absolutely the Britons, after their retreat in Wales, lost all the culture they had (239) received from the Romans, and, instead (231) of refining the ancient inhabitants of that part of the island, relapsed themselves into their

their rude and barbarous manners. (85) This is the more wonderful, because the Latin tongue and no contemptible share of its (234) learning were long preserved in their public schools and continued, though indeed in a declining state, even down to the times of (89) which I write. They had also retained the profession of the christian religion, but debased with gross superstitions: Giraldus Cambrensis informs (43) us, that they paid, in his days, a more devout reverence to churches and churchmen, to the relics of saints, to crosses, and to bells, than any other nation. Whenever any of them happened to meet a monk, or other ecclesiastic, they instantly (197) threw down their arms, and bowing their heads implored his blessing. When they (203) undertook a journey into any foreign country, or when they married or were enjoined by their confessors any public penance, they (197) paid a full tenth of all their goods, which they called "the great tythe," in the proportion of two parts to the church wherein they had been baptized, and one to their bishop. The excess of their superstition with relation to this point is censured by Giraldus Cambrensis himself, as great a bigot as he was; and it certainly (266) must have been one principal cause, why so many murders and other crimes were committed among them. Their hermits were celebrated for severer austerities than any others in Europe, the vehemence of their temper carrying their virtues, (151) as well as vices, into extremes. Pilgrimages to Rome were their favourite mode of devotion, though they had many saints of their own nation, whose shrines they adored with the blindest superstition. In short their religion for the most part, was so different from genuine christianity, that either it was prejudicial to civil society, or did (48) it no good.

Some account of the ruins of Poestum, or Possidonia, an ancient city of Magna Græcia, in the kingdom of Naples, which have been lately discovered. Extracted from a work newly published, that contains a description and views of the remaining antiquities, the inscriptions that have been discovered in or near that city, together with its antient and modern history, &c.

(108) **H**OW astonishing soever it may seem, that such very considerable remains of ancient magnificence should have continued totally undiscovered during so many (36) centuries, (259) it is nevertheless most certain that the author of this book is the first traveller who has given (48) us any account of the ruins of Poestum. If indeed (76) this city, like Herculaneum, had been (238) buried under ground by an earthquake or the eruption of a volcano, its concealment would not be at all miraculous. This miracle, however, (322) is to be accounted for from its remote situation, in a part of Italy entirely unfrequented by travellers. The manner in which (205) it was discovered is related by our Author in the following words; ‘ In the year 1755, an apprentice to a painter at Naples, who was on a visit to his friends at Capaccio, by accident took a walk to the mountains (87) which surround the territory of Poestum. The only habitation (88) he perceived, was the cottage of a farmer, who (203) cultivated the best part of the ground, and reserved the rest for pasture. The ruins of the ancient city (203) made a part of this view, and particularly (209) struck the eyes of the young painter; who, approaching nearer, saw with astonishment, (31) walls, (42) towers, gates, and temples. Upon his return to Capaccio, (209) he consulted the neighbouring people about the origin of these mountains of antiquity. He could only learn, that

that this part of the country had been, (238) uncultivated and abandoned during their memory ; and that about ten years before, the farmer, (89) whose habitation he had noticed, established himself there ; and that having dug in many places, and searched among the ruins that (197) lay round him, he had found treasures sufficient (158) to enable him to purchase the whole. At the painter's (18) return to Naples, (209) he informed his master of these particulars, (89) whose curiosity was so greatly excited by the description, that (209) he took a journey to the place, and made a drawing of the principal views. These were shewn to the king of Naples, who ordered the ruins to be cleared, and Poestum (209) arose from the obscurity in which it had remained for upwards of seven hundred years, (151) as little known to the neighbouring inhabitants as to travellers.

Our learned author, who has certainly been upon the spot, gives the following description of Poestum, in its present state. It is, says he, of an (9) oblong figure, about two miles and a half in circumference. It has four gates which are opposite to each other. On the key-stone of the arch of the north gate, on the outside, is the figure of Neptune in basso relievo, and within a hippocampus. The walls which still remain are (238) composed of very large (9) cubical stones, and are extremely thick, in some parts eighteen feet. That the walls have remained unto this time, is owing to the very exact manner in which the stones are fitted to one another (a circumstance observed universally in the masonry of the antients) ; and perhaps in (106) some measure to a stalactical concretion which has grown over them. On the walls here and there are (238) placed towers of different heights, those near the gates being much higher and larger than the others, and are evidently of modern workmanship. He observes that, from its situation among (31)

marshes, (9) bituminous and sulphurous springs, *Pæstum* must have been unwholesome; a circumstance mentioned by Strabo, *morbosam eam facit fluvius in paludes diffusus*. In such a situation the water must have been bad. Hence the inhabitants were obliged (178) to convey that necessary of life from purer springs by means of aqueducts, (89) of which many vestiges still remain.

The principal monuments of antiquity are a theatre, an amphitheatre, and three temples. The theatre and amphitheatre are much ruined. At one end the pilasters and two columns which divided the cella from the pronaos (235) are still remaining. Within the cella are two rows of smaller columns, with an architrave, which support the second order. This temple he takes to be of that kind called by Vitruvius *Hyphæthros*, and supports his opinion by a quotation from that author. The second temple has nine columns in front and eighteen in flank. The third has six columns in front and thirteen in flank. 'The columns of these temples, says our author, are of that kind of Doric order which we find employed in works of the greatest antiquity. They are hardly (13) five diameters in height. They are without bases, (324) which also has been urged as a proof of their antiquity; but we do not find (219) that the ancients ever used bases to this order, at least till very late. Vitruvius makes no mention of bases for this order; and the only instance we have (127) of it, is in the first order of the *colisæum* at Rome, which was built by Vespasian. The pillars of these temples are fluted with very shallow flutings in the manner described by Vitruvius. The columns diminish from the bottom, which was the most ancient method almost universally in all the orders. The columns have (32) astragals of a very singular form; which shews the error of those who imagine that this number was first invented with the

the Ionic order, to which the Greeks gave an astragal. and that the Romans were the first who applied it to the Doric. Our author mentions many (36) other particulars which sufficiently prove the great antiquity of these temples, and concludes with saying, that 'about the time when the temples at Poestum were built, architecture seems to have received that degree of improvement which the elegant taste of the Greeks had struck out from the rude masses of the Egyptians, the first inventors of this as of many other arts.'

A short account of the Sedmy Palaty, or Seven Palaces; a remarkable building and vestige of antiquity still remaining on the banks of the river Irtysh, in the country of the Kalmucks, being in the wilds of the great or eastern Tartary.

(259) **I**T is very surprising (167) to find such a regular edifice in the middle of a desert. Some of the Tartars say (321) it was built by Tamerlane, others by Gingeez-chan. The building, according to the best information (88) I could obtain, is of brick or stone, well finished, and continues still entire. It consists of seven apartments under one roof, from whence it has the name of the Seven Palaces. Several of these rooms are (238) filled (328) with scrolls of glazed paper, fairly wrote, and many of them in gilt characters. Some of the scrolls are black, but the greatest part white. The language in which they are written is that of the Tongusts, or Kalmucks. While (201) I was at Tobolsky, I met with a soldier in the street with a bundle of these papers in his hand. He asked (48) me to buy (43) them; which I did for a small sum. I kept them till my arrival in England, when I distributed them among my friends; particularly

larly to that learned antiquarian Sir Hans Sloane, who valued them at a high rate, and gave them a place in his celebrated museum.

Two of these scrolls were sent, by order of the emperor Peter the first, to the royal academy at Paris. The academy returned a translation, which I saw in the rarity (20) chamber at St. Petersburg. One of them (203) contained a commission to a lama or priest; and the other a form of prayer to the deity. Whether this interpretation (120) may be depended on I shall not determine.

The Tartars esteem them all sacred writings, as appears from the care (88) they take (157) to preserve them. Perhaps they may contain some curious pieces of antiquity, particularly of ancient history. Above the Sedmy Palaty, towards the source of the Irtysh, upon the hills and valleys, grows the best rhubarb in the world, without the least culture.

A curious account of the great eruption of Mount Vesuvius, on the 19th of October, 1767. Extracted from a letter wrote to a friend in England, by the Honourable William Hamilton, envoy extraordinary and minister plenipotentiary of his Britannic majesty to the king of the two Sicilies.

AS I have (136) nothing material (157) to tell you at present, I will endeavour (180) to give you a short and exact (10) account of the eruption, which (120) is allowed to have been the most violent, though of short duration, (155) in the memory of man. I had foretold this eruption some time, having had opportunities from my villa to watch its motions more minutely than any one here; and those threats which you (209) read in the papers were extracts from my letters to Lord Shelburne. The 19th, at seven in the morning, I (209) saw an unusual smোক issue

issue with great violence from the mouth of the volcano, and form the shape of a pine-tree, as Pliny described before the eruption in which his uncle perished; by which I knew (325) the eruption to be at hand, and in fact before eight I saw the mountain (326) open, and the lava run from the crack, near the top of the volcano; but as it took its course on the side opposite our villa, I had the curiosity (203) to go round, and take a nearer view of it: as it requires time and fatigue to go up, I did not come in sight of the lava, which (202) was running in two streams down the side of the mountain, till eleven o'clock. I (201) had only a peasant of the mountain with me, and (202) was making my remarks, when on a sudden about mid-day the great eruption (210) happened about a quarter of a mile from me; at first it was only like a fountain of liquid fire which sprung up many feet in the air, then a torrent burst out with a most horrid noise, and came towards us. I took off my coat to lighten myself, and gave (51) it to the peasant, and we thought proper to run three miles without (231) stopping. By this time the noise had greatly encreased, and the ashes (203) caused almost a total darkness, and as the earth shook I thought proper (156) to retire still further, and upon returning home I perceived another lava towards the *Torre del Annonciata*, which in less than two hours flowed four miles. Our villa shook so much, and the smell of sulphur (201) was so strong, that I † thought proper to return to Naples; and indeed the fright of the family was so great, that it was impossible (167) to remain at the villa. (18) The king's palace, though not so (152) near the mountain as our villa, is still † within reach of the lavas, (252) there being no less than seven, one upon another,

† Juger à propos. † A la portée.

another, under the palace. I thought it right to acquaint the court of the impending danger; and (57) advised the Marquis Tanucci to persuade (191) his Sicilian Majesty to remove to Naples directly; but, for what reason I know not, my advice was not followed; and the consequence was, (321) the lava coming within a mile and a half of the palace, and the thunder of the mountain encreasing, the whole court was (238) obliged (177) to remove in the middle of the same night in the utmost confusion. The explosions of the volcano occasioned so violent a concussion of the air, that the door of the king's room at Portici was (238) burst open, and one door in the palace though locked was forced open; and (83) what is more wonderful, the like (209) happened in many parts of Naples itself. The mountain for three days made this noise by fits, which (198) lasted five or six hours each time, and then was perfectly quiet: we did not see the sun clear almost the whole week, and the ashes fell in quantities at Naples, so as to cover the houses and streets an (12) inch deep or more. (249) 'Tis really wonderful to think (190) of the quantity of matter that came out of the mountain in so short a time, for on Thursday the lavas ceased (161) running, and if I had not (239) examined (43) them myself since, I could not have believed it: from the place where I saw the mountain (327) burst, to the point where the lava stopped near Portici, there is ¶ to be sure seven miles, and five miles of this it travelled in two hours, the very road I came down; notwithstanding which, in some places the torrent is (14) two miles broad, and the lava (13) 40 feet high: it took its course through an immense water channel that is about (14) 400 feet deep, and actually filled (51) it up in some places. Stones of a most enormous size (209) were thrown up from the mouth of the volcano near a mile high,

¶ Sans doute.

high, I believe, and fell at least half a mile (127) from it: in short it is impossible (187) to describe so glorious and horrid a scene: for whilst this (202) was going on, Naples was crowded with processions, women with (71) their hair loose and bare feet, full of every superstition. The prisoners (209) killed their gaoler and attempted to break out. The cardinal arch-bishop's gate was (238) burnt down, because he would not (327) bring out St. Januarius; and when he was brought out on Thursday, a mob of an incredible number of people loaded the saint with abuse for § suffering the mountain to frighten (43) them so: their expressions were—You are a pretty saint protector indeed! you yellow-faced fellow! (for the silver in which the saint's head is incased is very much tarnished), and when the noise of the mountain ceased, they fell upon (71) their faces and thanked him for the miracle, and (209) returned to the cathedral singing his praises, and telling (48) him how handsome he was. I am sorry to say that all (85) this is actually true: ¶ nay it would fill many sheets to tell you half (83) of what I saw last week of this sort. The mountain is now quite calm, and I believe for the present (321) there is an end of this eruption, but I do not believe all the matter (219) is yet come out. I am very glad so much is come out, and that Genariello did not stop it sooner; for if he had, we should surely have had an earthquake and been demolished. This last eruption has fully satisfied my curiosity, and I should be as well satisfied, if the mountain was 100 miles from this capital.

§. Pour avoir permis!

¶ Et même.

ABOUT

ABOUT the year A. M. 3782, the island of Rhodes suffered (33) very great damages by an earthquake: the walls of the city, with the arsenals, and the narrow passes in the havens, where the ships of (76) that island were laid up, were reduced to a very ruinous condition; and the famous Colossus, which (201) was esteemed one of the wonders of the world, (210) was thrown down and entirely destroyed. (259) It is natural (167) to think that this earthquake spared (136) neither private nor public structures, nor even the temples of the gods. The loss sustained by it amounted to immense sums; and the Rhodians, (236) reduced to the utmost distress, sent deputations to all the neighbouring princes (156) to implore their relief in that melancholy conjuncture. An emulation worthy of praise, and not to be (238) paralleled in history, (209) prevailed in favour of that deplorable city: Hiero and Gelon in Sicily, and Ptolemy in Egypt, (24) signalized themselves in a peculiar manner on that occasion. The two former of these princes (210) contributed above an hundred talents, and erected two statues in the (9) public place; one of which (203) represented the people of Rhodes, and the other those of Syracuse, the former was crowned by the latter, (156) to testify, as Polybius observes, that the Syracusans (203) thought the opportunity (231) of relieving the Rhodians a favour and obligation to themselves. Ptolemy, besides his other expences, which amounted to a very considerable sum, (209) supplied that people with 300 talents, 100,000 bushels of corn, and a sufficient quantity of timber for (231) building ten galleys of ten benches of oars, and as many more of three benches, besides an infinite quantity (36) of wood for other buildings; all which donations were (238) accompanied (41) with 3000 talents for (231) erecting the Colossus anew. Antigonus, Seleucus.

cus, Prusias, Mithridates, and all the princes, (151) as well as cities, signalized their liberality on the occasion. Even private persons (209) emulated each other in sharing in this glorious act of humanity; and historians have recorded that a lady, (89) whose name was Chryseis, furnished, from her own substance, an hundred thousand bushels of corn. Rhodes, in consequence of these liberalities, was re-established in a few years, in a more opulent and splendid state than (147) she had ever experienced before, if we (44) only except the Colossus. POLYB. l. 5. p. 428.

AFTER the Carthaginians had defeated the (9) Roman army, and taken Regulus, that illustrious commander, prisoner, they met (209) with a series of misfortunes that induced them (169) to think of putting an end to so destructive a war by a speedy peace. With this view, they began (169) to soften the rigour of Regulus's (18) confinement; and endeavoured to engage him (43) to go to Rome with their ambassadors, and to use his interest to bring about a peace upon moderate terms, or at least an exchange of prisoners. Regulus obeyed (209) his masters, and embarked for Rome, after having bound himself by a solemn oath, to return to his chains, if the negotiation (203) did not succeed. The Carthaginian ship arrived safe in Italy: but when Regulus came to the gates of the city, he refused to enter them; my misfortunes, said he, have made (43) me a slave to the Carthaginians, I am no longer a Roman citizen. The senate always gives audience to foreigners without the gates. His wife Marcia (209) went out to meet him, and presented (48) to him his two children: but he, only casting a wild look on them, fixed (71) his eyes on the ground, as if he thought (24) himself unworthy of the embraces of his wife, and the caresses of his children. When the senators assembled in the suburbs, he

he was introduced to them with the Carthaginian ambassadors; and, together with them, made the two proposals (89) wherewith he was charged. "Conscript fathers," said he, "being now a slave to the Carthaginians, I am come (159) to treat with you concerning a peace, and an exchange of prisoners." Having uttered these words, he (209) began to withdraw, and follow the ambassadors, who were not allowed to be present at the deliberations and disputes of the conscript fathers. In vain the senate pressed (43) him to stay. He gave his opinion as an old senator and consul, and refused to continue in the assembly, till his African masters ordered (48) him: and then the illustrious slave (209) took his place among the fathers; but continued silent, with his eyes fixed on the ground, while the more ancient senators spoke. When it came to his turn to deliver his opinion, he addressed himself to the conscript fathers in the following words: "Though I am a slave at Carthage, yet I am free at Rome; and will therefore declare my sentiments with freedom. Romans, it is not for your interest either to grant the Carthaginians a peace, or to make an exchange of prisoners with them. Carthage is extremely (238) exhausted; and the only reason why she sues for peace is, because she is not in a condition to continue the war. You have been vanquished (140) but once, and (85) that by my fault; a fault which Metellus has repaired (239) by a signal victory. But the Carthaginians have been so often overcome, that they have not the courage to look Rome in the face. Your allies continue peaceable, and serve (43) you with zeal. But your enemies (18) troops consist only of mercenaries, who have no other tie than that of interest, and will soon be disobliged by the republic. (88) they serve, Carthage being already quite destitute of money to pay (48) them. No, Romans, a peace with Carthage does not, by
any

any means suit your interest, considering the condition (90) to which the Carthaginians are reduced: I therefore advise you to pursue the war with greater vigour than ever. As for the exchange of prisoners, you have among the Carthaginian captives several officers of distinction, who are young, and may one day command the enemies armies; but, as for me, I am advanced in years, and my misfortunes have made me useless. Besides, what can you expect from soldiers who have been vanquished, and made slaves? Such men, like timorous deer that have escaped out of the (18) hunter's toils, will ever be upon the alarm, and ready to fly." The senate, greatly affected (41) with his disinterestedness, (67) magnanimity, and contempt of life, would willingly have preserved (43) him, and continued the war in Africa. Some were of opinion, that in Rome he was not obliged (177) to keep an oath which had been extorted from him in an (18) enemy's country. The *Pontifex Maximus* himself, being consulted in the case, (209) declared, that Regulus † might continue at Rome, without (231) being guilty of perjury. But the noble captive, highly offended at (76) this decision, as if his honour and (67) courage were called in question, declared to the senate, who (203) trembled to hear (43) him speak, that he (44) well knew what torments (120) were reserved for him at Carthage; but that (201) he had so much of the true spirit of a Roman, (155) as to dread less the tortures of a cruel rack, than the shame of a dishonourable action, which would follow (43) him to the grave. (262) "It is my duty," said he, "to return to Carthage: let the gods take care of the rest." This intrepidity made the senate still more desirous (231) of saving such an hero. (120) All means were made use of (158) to make him stay, both by the people

† Pouvoit.

people and the senate. He would not even see his wife, nor suffer his children to † take their leave of him. Amidst the lamentations and tears of the whole city, [209] he embarked with the Carthaginian ambassadors, [158] to return to the place of his slavery, with [151] as serene and chearful a countenance, as if he had been [235] going to a country-seat for his diversion. The Carthaginians were so enraged against him, that [209] they invented new torments to satisfy their revenge. First, they cut off [74] his eye-lids; keeping him for a while in a dark dungeon, and then bringing him out, and exposing him to the sun at noon-day. After [85] this, they shut him up in a kind of chest, stuck [328] with nails, having their points inwards, so that he could [136] neither sit nor lean, without great torment; and there they suffered him to die [328] with hunger, anguish, and want of sleep.

CHARLES I. King of England (199) was a monarch (89) whose principles, (42) conduct, fortune, and death, by powerfully engaging the opposite interests of men, have given rise (10) to bitter and irreconcilable contests. Regarded as the martyr to church and state, the patron of the clergy, the support of the nobility, we behold (43) him, in the representations of a considerable party, adorned (41) with every flower of panegyric. By the bigots of a different persuasion his memory, notwithstanding the tribute (88) he paid to his errors, is (231) held in the highest detestation. Without (231) approving or condemning either party, this we may assert as an incontestible truth, that he (209) bore his fate, unparalleled in the annals of princes, with a magnanimity that would have done honour to the best cause (327) in the world. (85) This will appear by a concise
recital

† Prendre congé.

recital of his trial, (67) condemnation, and execution, with which every Englishman ought to be acquainted.

During the preparative measures (185) to bring the king to a trial, he, by the direction of the army, [209] was removed from Hurst Castle to Windsor; by the same authority (which at this time was supreme) every symbol of royalty [120] was withdrawn, and it was commanded that he should be served by his attendants without ceremony. From the second of January 1648, to the 19th of the same month, the terms of the important trial had been adjusting. The special commission was composed of the prime officers of the army, several members of the lower house, and several citizens of London: [203] it consisted of one hundred and thirty-three persons, and was nominated the high court of justice. Bradshaw, a lawyer of note, [289] was by his fellow commissioners elected president: Coke was appointed solicitor for the people: Dorislaus, Steel and Ask assistants to the court. [20] Westminster Hall was fitted up for their [234] sitting; and the ceremony, with which the whole transaction was [238] conducted, corresponded in pomp and dignity to the singular, the great occasion; a sovereign prince brought before the tribunal of his own subjects, and tried by their delegates for his mis-government and breach of trust. Deudy, the serjeant at arms to the || house of commons, by beat of drum and sound of trumpet, [328] had, in the palace-yard, at the old Exchange, and at Cheapside, proclaimed to the people the time when the commissioners of the high court of justice commenced [234] sitting; and that all [80] those who had any thing [169] to say against the king would be heard.

On the 20th of January the commissioners [209] proceeded in state from the Painted Chamber to Westminster Hall. Colonel Humphry [201] carried the

C c

sword

|| *Chambre Basse.*

sword before the president, serjeant Deudy the mace, and twenty gentlemen (commanded by colonel Fox) attended as his guard of partizans. The royal prisoner, who had been removed from Windsor to St. James's, was, by a strong guard of musqueteers, conveyed by water to Westminster Hall. A chair of [9] crimson velvet [120] was prepared for him without the bar, and thirty officers and gentlemen [203] waited with halberts behind it. The solicitor of the commons, in his charge against the king, represented, that Charles Stuart, being admitted king of England, and entrusted with a limited power, had, with the wicked design [156] to erect an [10] unlimited and tyrannical government, traiterously and maliciously levied war against the people and their representatives: that on behalf of the people, he did, for this treasonable breach of trust, [203] impeach [43] him as a tyrant, a traitor, a murderer, and a public and implacable enemy to the commonwealth.

On the conclusion of the charge, the king [209] demanded by what authority he was brought before [76] that court? He told the commissioners [159] to remember [321] he was their king, their lawful king, and to beware of the sins with which they were going to stain [24] themselves, and the land. [329] He was answered by the president, that he was tried in the name and by the authority of the parliament assembled and the good people of England. Charles [209] objected, that both king and house of lords were necessary to constitute a parliament: he had a trust, he said, committed [48] to him by God, by old and lawful descent; and he would not betray [51] it to answer to [10] a new and unlawful authority. He [44] again bade the commissioners [159] remember he was their hereditary sovereign; and that the whole authority of the state, when free and united, [23] was not entitled [175] to try him, who [203] derived

derived his dignity from the supreme Majesty of heaven: that, admitting these extravagant principles, which place the origin of power in the people, the court could plead no authority delegated by the people, unless the consent of every individual, down to the meanest, the most ignorant peasant, [216] had been previously asked and obtained. [250] There was no jurisdiction on earth that could try a king: the authority of the obedience to kings was clearly warranted and strictly commanded both in the old and new testament; this, if denied, he was ready instantly [175] to prove; "where the word of a king was there [270] was power, and who might say [48] unto him what doest thou?" He owned, he said, he was entrusted; a sacred trust had been committed to him by God, the liberties of his people, which he would not betray by recognizing a power founded on violence, and usurpation. He [198] had taken arms, and frequently exposed his life in defence of [9] public liberty, in defence of the constitution, in defence of the fundamental laws of the kingdom, and was willing to seal [41] with his blood those precious rights for which he had so long in vain contended. To [18] the king's assertion, that he had taken up arms [158] to defend the liberty of the constitution, and that he now pleaded for the rights and freedom of all his subjects, the president [209] returned, [323] "How great a friend, Sir, you have been to the laws and liberties of the people, let all England and the world judge: your actions have sufficiently declared it, and your meaning has been written in bloody characters throughout the kingdom." The court [329] was reminded by the prisoner, that the laws of England determined the king could do no wrong; however, he was able, he said, by the most satisfactory reasons to justify his conduct, but [266] must forego the apology of his innocence, lest by rati-

fying an authority no better founded than that of robbers and pirates, he should be justly branded as the betrayer, instead of applauded as the martyr, of the constitution.

Three several days the king was produced before the court, and as often urged [159] to answer to his charge. The fourth, on his constantly [234] persisting to decline its jurisdiction, the commissioners [209] examined witnesses, by whom it was proved, that the king had appeared in arms against his people. Before the passing sentence Charles [44] earnestly desired to be admitted to a conference with the two houses : he had something [169] to propose, he said, which he was sure would be for the welfare of the kingdom and liberty of the subject. [119] It was supposed that he intended to offer [159] to resign the crown to his son ; and some of the commissioners pressed that he might be heard. [85] This was not the opinion of the majority ; and the commissioners returning from the court of wards, where they had adjourned [158] to consult on the king's proposal, acquainted the prisoner, that his request was considered as a delay of justice. The president [209] passed sentence of death, by severing the head from the body ; and all the members of the court [209] stood up in token of approbation.

Three days [120] only were allowed the king between his sentence and [67] execution. This interval he [209] passed in reading and devotion, and preserved, from the time when his intended fate [120] was made known [48] to him, to his last moments, a perfect tranquillity and composure, nor can his bitterest enemies deny, that in his conduct under the dreadful apprehension of a violent death, was united the magnanimity of heroism, with the patience of martyrdom.

The scaffold for execution was erected before the palace of Whitehall. [120] Care was taken that it should

should be sufficiently surrounded with soldiers, [158] to prevent disorder or interruption ; and the king, finding himself shut out from the hearing of the people, addressed a speech to colonel Tomlinson, the commander of the guard, in which he asserted his innocence in the war [88] he had levied, termed [51] it defensive ; accused the parliament [233] of having first enlisted forces ; and averred that he had no other object in his military operations than [156] to preserve entire that authority which had been transmitted [48] to him by his ancestors ; insisted on a perfect innocence towards his people ; forgave his enemies ; and exhorted the people [169] to return to the paths of obedience, and to submit to the government of their lawful sovereign, his son and successor.

Bishop Juxon, [89] whose attendance the king had very particularly and earnestly desired, [209] remembered his master, that the people would expect him to make some declaration on the point of religion. On [85] this the king very earnestly protested, that he had ever lived, and now [203] died in the religion of the church of England. Whilst he [235] was preparing for execution, the bishop poured out a few lifeless exhortations ; to these the king returned ; “ I go from a corruptible to an incorruptible crown, where no disturbance can have place.” Then laying [74] his head upon the block, the executioner (whose face was concealed in a vizor) severed [43] it with one stroke from the body : an assistant (in the like disguise) held it up to the spectators, streaming with blood, and, after the usual manner [236] observed in similar executions, cried aloud, “ This is the head of a traitor.”

Thus, by a fate unparalleled in the annals of princes, * terminated the unfortunate life and turbulent reign of Charles Stuart, king of England. To a mind

C c 3

softened

* Unless we except that of Agis, king of Sparta.

tened by habits of amusement, and intoxicated with ideas of self-importance, the transition from royal pomp to a prison, from easy, gay and luxurious [10] life, to a premature and violent death by the hands of an executioner, are punishments so sharp and affecting, that we are apt [175] to dwell on his hardships, and forget his crimes ; to throw the mantle of oblivion over the dark parts of his character, and only to remember that he [209] bore his sufferings in a manner which would have done honour to the best cause.

MARCUS Brutus, the [9] Roman general, was of an extraordinary mild disposition and great magnanimity, and therefore, before he began hostilities, sent to the Lycians, [158] to demand a supply of men and money ; but the Lycians, despising his humanity and [67] good nature, would hearken to no terms : so that Brutus [209] was forced, against his will, to lay siege to Xanthus, their capital city, which he foresaw [210] would bring innumerable evils on a [10] brave and gallant people. [7] The besieged [209] made a most vigorous defence, and behaved in their sallies with unparalleled bravery, but were always [238] repulsed with great loss. The next day, about noon, they [209] made another sally, set fire to the engines of their enemies, and retired in great haste within the walls. The Romans pursued [43] them close, and entered the city to the number of two thousand, with the besieged ; but the port-cullis falling, either by a stratagem of the enemy, or by accident, many of the Romans were crushed to pieces, and the rest shut in without any possible means [233] of retiring, or receiving the least assistance from their friends. In this desperate condition they resolved at least [159] to sell their lives dear ; and with this view marched in good order through showers of darts

to

to a temple dedicated to Sarpëdon, king of Lycia, who was supposed to have been killed in the Trojan war. There [209] they fortified themselves, and sustained a siege in the heart of the city. In the mean time Brutus and his men exerted their utmost efforts [158] to relieve their fellow-soldiers ; but all their endeavours were to no effect, the Xanthians defending it with a bravery and resolution which surprised the Romans themselves. Some sparks of fire being [238] carried by a violent wind from the machines, which [203] burnt with great fierceness, to the battlements, and from thence to the adjoining houses, the flame [209] was soon spread all over the city, and the conflagration became general. Brutus, fearing [321] the whole would be destroyed, ordered his soldiers [159] to lay aside all thoughts of revenge, and assist the inhabitants [170] in quenching the fire. Perceiving the flames blaze out in different parts of the city in a most frightful manner, he [209] mounted his horse, and riding round the walls, stretched forth [71] his hand to the inhabitants, begging of them that they would spare their own lives, and save their town : but his intreaties were not regarded. The Xanthians were immovably determined not to out-live the loss of their liberty, and therefore repulsed, with showers of arrows, the Romans whom the good-natured general sent to their assistance. Nay, they themselves gathering together reeds, wood, and other combustible matter, spread the fire over the whole city, feeding [51] it with what fuel [68] they could get. Some of them cut the throats of their wives, their children, and their slaves, before the soldiers [18] faces, and then leaped into the flames. Not only the men, but the women, nay, even the children ran like wild beasts on the enemies swords, or threw themselves headlong from the top of the walls. Some children [120] were seen offering [71] their throats, or opening their breasts to their fathers

fathers swords, and begging [321] they would take away that life which they had [239] given. When the city was almost wholly [238] reduced to ashes, a woman was found, who had hanged herself with her young child fastened to her neck, and the torch in [71] her hand, with which she had set fire to her own house. When [83] this was related to Brutus, he burst into tears, and declining to see so tragical an object, he proclaimed a reward to any soldier who should save a Xanthian ; but, with all his care and [67] goodness, he could only preserve one hundred and fifty ; and those much against their will.

THE Patagons are first [238] mentioned in the account of a voyage for new discoveries, undertaken by Magellan in the year 1519. The words in Harris's [18] abridgment of this account are these : " When they had crossed the line, and the south [20] pole appeared above the horizon, they [209] held on their south course, and came upon the Main of Brazil, about that part of it which lies in twenty-two degrees. They observed [51] it to be all one continued tract of land, higher from the cape St. Augustine, which is in this part of the country. Having made two degrees and a half more south latitude, they fell in with a country [236] inhabited by a wild sort of people : They were of prodigious stature, fierce and barbarous, [200] made a horrible roaring noise, more like bulls than human creatures ; and yet with all that mighty bulk were so nimble and light of foot that none of the Spaniards or Portuguese could overtake them. [43]

The next advance was to 49 degrees and a half south latitude ; here they were shut up by hard weather, and forced [178] to take up their winter quarters for no less than five months. They for a long time [209] believed the country to be uninhabited,

but

but at length a savage of the neighbouring parts came up [158] to give them a visit ; he was a brisk jolly fellow, merrily disposed, singing and dancing all the way he came ; being got to the haven, he stood [125] there, and threw dust upon [71] his head, upon which some people went ashore [49] to him, who also throwing dust upon their heads, he came with them to the ship without fear or suspicion. The head of one of Magellan's middle-sized men reached [140] but to his waist, and he was proportionably big ; his body [200] was formidably painted all over, especially [71] his face. A stag's horn was drawn upon each cheek, and great red circles round his eyes ; his colours were otherwise mostly yellow, only his hair was white. For his apparel, he had the skin of a beast clumsily sewed together, but a beast as strange as that was that wore it ; every way unaccountable, neither mule, horse, nor camel, but something of every one, the ears of the first, the tail of the second, and the shape and body of the last ; it was one entire suit, all of one piece from head to foot ; as his breast and back were covered with it above, so his legs and feet were wrapped up in it below. The arms that he brought with him, were a stout bow and arrow. The strings of the bow was a gut or sinew of the beast whose skin covered him, and the arrows were tipped with sharp stones.

Magellan, the admiral, made him [326] eat and drink, and he enjoyed himself very comfortably till he happened to peep into a looking-glass that [119] was given him among other trifles : This put him into a fright [89] from which he could not easily recover, so that starting back with violence, he threw two of the men who [203] stood by him to the ground. This giant, however, fared so well, notwithstanding his fright by the looking-glass, that the Spaniards had quickly the company of more ; one in particular made
himself

himself mighty familiar, and shewed so much pleasantry and good humour that the Europeans were greatly pleased [41] with his company.

Magellan was desirous [231] of making some of the gigantic people prisoners, and with this view his crew filled their hands with toys and things that pleased them; and in the mean time put iron shackles upon [71] their legs; at first they thought them fine play-things as well [151] as the rest, and were pleased with their gingling sound; but, when they found themselves hampered and betrayed, they implored the aid of some [10] superior and invisible being, by the name of Setebos; upon this occasion their strength appeared to be proportionable to their bulk, for one of them defeated the utmost efforts of nine men, and though they had him down, and tied his hands tightly, yet [209] he freed himself from his bonds, and got loose, in spite of all their endeavours [158] to detain him. Their appetite is also in proportion to their strength; the admiral gave [48] them the name of Patagons. They tie up their hair, though it is short, with a cotton lace. They have no fixed habitations, but certain moveable cottages, which they carry from place to place as their fancy leads them; their cottages are covered with the same skin that [71] covers their body. A certain sweet root which they call by the name they give to bread, *capar*, is a considerable part of their food; what flesh they eat is [238] devoured raw.

They practise physic [140] but in two articles, vomiting and phlebotomy, and both in a very extraordinary manner. To vomit, they thrust an arrow a foot and half down the throat; and [158] to bleed, they give the part affected, whether leg, arm, or face, a good chop with some sharp instrument."

Such is the account of the Patagons, as given by Harris, who says [321] he has taken the utmost pains to

to give it in the clearest manner possible, by comparing all the different relations of the Portuguese and Spanish writers ; and it is to be hoped that no man can read the account of the violence and perfidy practised against these blameless, friendly, unsuspecting people, without indignation. Harris, however, suffers it to pass without animadversion ; and probably described this attempt of Magellan to betray the confidence of a reasonable being, and to force him into exile and misery, with as much phlegm as he would [234] the snaring a tyger, or hooking a fish.

Magellan himself was afterwards killed in an hostile attempt to extort tribute from a king of Mathan, or Matahan, one of the Ladrone Islands, to which he had just as much right as the king of Mathan had [160] to expect a tribute from Spain.

The Patagons are next mentioned in an account of the voyage of Sir Francis Drake ; but in Harris's epitome their stature is not particularly ascertained. The paragraph relating to them being only as follows :

“ In sailing south from the river of Plate, in latitude 36 S. they came to a good bay, in which [200] were several petty islands ; the admiral being on shore in one of these islands, the people came dancing and leaping about him, and were very free to trade ; they were a comely strong-bodied people, very swift of foot, and of a brisk lively constitution ; their faces were [238] painted, and their apparel only a [234] covering of the skins of beasts, with the fur on about their waists, and something wreathed about their heads ; they had bows an ell [11] long, but no more than two arrows a-piece : They seemed not altogether ignorant of martial discipline, as appeared by their method of ordering and ranging their men. They were the nation which Magellan called Patagons.”

The

The latitude of this island is not particularly mentioned ; [266] it must have been about 46 or 47. [250] There is some difference in the accounts of their cloathing ; Magellan says they were cloathed from head to † foot ; Drake, that they were covered [142] only round the waist, and upon the head ; but [85] this may easily be accounted for, because Magellan wintered with them, and Drake saw them in summer.

These giants are next [120] mentioned in an account of a voyage round the world, by Sir Thomas Cavendish : Of which Harris's epitome is as follows.

“ Sailing from Cape Frio, in the Brasils, they fell in upon the coast of America, in 47 d. 20 m. north. They proceeded to port Desire, in latitude 50. Here the savages wounded two of the company with their arrows, which are made of cane, headed with flints. A wild and rude sort of creatures they were ; and, as it seemed, of a gigantic race, the measure of one of their feet being 18 inches in length, which reckoning by the usual proportion, will give about 7 feet and an half for their stature.” Harris says that this agrees very exactly with the account given [127] of them by Magellan, but in his epitome of Magellan's account he says that the head of one of his middle-sized men [203] reached but to the Patagonian's waist ; which, supposing Magellan's man to be [144] but [12] 5 feet 6 inches high, will make the Patagonian 9 at least. He says, indeed, that Magellan gave them the name of Patagons, because their stature was five cubits, or seven feet six ; but, if so, his own account is inconsistent with itself, neither has he told us in what language Patagon expresses this stature.

Oliver Noort, the first Dutchman that attempted a voyage round the world, performed his expedition between the years 1598 and 1601, and the account [88] he

† Depuis la tête jusqu'aux pieds.

he gives of the inhabitants of these parts, as abridged by Harris, is to the following effect :

“ He went up the river at Port Desire, and going on shore, found beasts like stags and buffaloes, also some savages, who, he says, were tall portly men, painted, and armed with (328) short bows and arrows, that were headed with stone.

These beasts like buffaloes probably furnished the skins that Magellan described to have the ears of an ass, the tail of a horse, and the shape of a camel, for the buffalo has a bunch upon his back.

Having afterwards entered the Streights, they saw some men upon two islands, near a cape which is here called cape Nassau. There is no cape marked either in the chart or map prefixed to Harris's collection by that name, nor has he told us to which of the capes that are marked this name was given by the Dutch. These savages having now, by sad experience, been taught to regard every European as an enemy, shook their weapons against the Dutch, in hopes to prevent (234) their landing. The Dutch, however, did land upon one of the islands, and the poor Indians retreating, they pursued them to the cave which (203) contained their wives and children, and killed every one of them. When these ruffians rushed in, the women covered their infants with their own bodies, that they might receive the first stab ; the Dutch did not, indeed, murder these forlorn and defenceless wretches in cold blood, but having butchered the fathers and husbands, they took away six of the children, four boys and two girls, and carried them on shipboard. (259) It is impossible for any man, whose feelings of humanity have not been obtunded by selfishness or superstition, (156) to read the accounts of the discoveries and settlements of the people of Europe, in other parts of the world, (231) without regretting their success, and wishing that they had all perished in the attempt.

tempt. In these expeditions they have filled the earth (328) with violence, and, as far as their influence could extend, diffused wickedness and misery, by every violation of the laws of nature, that the most wanton cruelty and sordid avarice could prompt, while they distinguished themselves from those (80) whom they (203) destroyed, and enslaved, by the name of christians, and gloried in the refinements of honour, which, looking down upon mere moral obligation, pretends to merit beyond the limits of duty.

One of the boys thus brought on board Van Noort's fleet, (209) learnt the Dutch language, and gave intelligence to the following effect: that the inhabitants of the continent near the island from which he had been taken, were divided into different tribes; that three of these tribes, which he distinguished by the names of Kemenetes, Kenekin, and Karaicks, were of the common size, but broader breasted and painted all over; and that there was another tribe, which he called Tiriminen, who were of a gigantic stature, being 10 or 12 feet high, and continually at war with the other tribes.

This boy gave an account of the cloathing and appearance of the inhabitants of this country, very different from those already transcribed; for he said the men wore their hair long, that the women were shaved, and that both went naked, except a cloak of Penguin's skins, which reached to their waist.

Sebald de Weert, another Dutchman, sailed to the Streights of Magellan in 1598, and in his account are the following particulars. He detached two sloops to an island near the mouth of the Streights, (158) to catch sea-dogs. When these sloops came near the shore, they (209) perceived seven canoes, with savages on board, that (13) were ten or eleven feet high, of a reddish colour, and with long hair. They are farther described as being naked, except one who had a
sea-

sea-dog's skin about his shoulders : and it is remarkable that de Weert was on this coast in May, which is there (20) a winter month.

In the account given of the voyage of George Spilbergen, we (119) are told that on the coast of Terra del Fuego, which is to the south of Magellan's Streights, his people (209) saw a man of a gigantic stature, climbing the hills to take a view of the fleet, but, though they went on shore, they saw no other human inhabitant ; they saw, however, several graves containing bodies of the ordinary size, or rather below it ; and the savages they saw from time to time in canoes, appeared to be under six feet high.

In the history of the voyage of Capt. Cowley, an Englishman, which was undertaken in 1683, we have an account of giants indeed, but in a country very distant from Patagonia. In lat. 13 deg. 30 min. north, and about 143 east longitude, lies the island of Guam ; it is one of the Ladrone Islands, and was then in the possession of the Spaniards, who had a governor and garrison there. The Indian inhabitants of this island, Cowley says, were all well made, active, vigorous, and some of them seven feet and an half high. Capt. Cowley took, as he says, four of these infidels prisoners, which, to be sure, being himself a good christian, he had a right (162) to do ; and it appears by the sequel of the account, that he treated (43) them as other good christians had treated infidels, which strength or cunning had put into their power. " We brought them on board, says he, (71) tying their hands behind them, but they had not been long (125) there before three of them leapt overboard into the sea, swimming away from the ship with their hands bound behind them ; we sent a boat after them, and found that a strong man at the first blow could not penetrate their skins with a cutlass. One of them had received, in my judgment, forty shots in his body before he died, and

the last of the three that was killed had swam a good English mile, though his hands were not only tied behind him, but his arms pinioned."

Thus it appears that these three poor naked wretches were all murdered in cold blood, because they endeavoured to escape from those, who, without provocation, had injuriously and cruelly seized them by violence, in their native country, and (235) were carrying them as slaves into exile.

In an account of Capt. George Shelvock's voyage, which was undertaken in the year 1719, (250) there is the following paragraph.—"M. Frezier gives (48) us an account that the Indians inhabiting the continent to the south of this island (the island of Chiloe, which lies off the coast of Chili, about lat. 42 S. and long. about 72 W. of London) are called Chronos, that they go quite naked, and that in the inland part there is a race of men of an extraordinary size, called Cacabues, who being in amity with the Chronos, have sometimes come with them to the dwellings of the Spaniards at Chiloe. He adds, that he was credibly informed by several who had been eyewitnesses, that some were about nine or ten feet high. Who Frezier was, Mr. Harris, though he quotes him, does not tell us. His story is certainly fabulous, for the whole coast of Chili, and the island of Chiloe, having been long in possession of the Spaniards, the existence of a gigantic race in those parts, if real, would have been long out of doubt. The same objection lies against the account given of the Indian natives of Guam, by Cowley. The giants, four of whom he says he took prisoners, and three (89) of whom he murdered, must have been familiar to the Spaniards, and consequently, their existence recorded by Spanish writers of credit, so as to make the fact as well known and believed as the existence of the island itself.

SENECA

SENECA* tells (48) us, that Socrates desired his friends (159) to apprise him whenever they (203) saw him ready (175) to fall into a passion, and that he had given them that privilege over him which he took himself with them †. Indeed the best time (156) to call in aid against rage and anger, that have too violent and sudden power over us, is when we are yet ourselves and in cool blood. At the first signal, the best animadversion, he either (198) softened his tone or was silent. Finding himself in great emotion against a slave, “ I would beat (43) you, says he, if I were not angry.” Having received a ‡ box on the ear, he contented himself, (156) with only saying with a smile, “ It is a misfortune (130) not to know when to put on an helmet.” Socrates meeting a gentleman of rank in the street, saluted him, but the gentleman took no notice of it. His friends in company, observing (83) what passed, told the philosopher, “ That they were so exasperated, at the man’s incivility, that they had a good mind to resent it.” But he (44) very calmly made answer, “ If you meet any person on the road in a worse habit of body than yourself, would you think that you had reason (163) to be enraged at him on that account? if not, pray then, what greater reason can you have (163) for being incensed at a man of a worse habit of mind than any of yourselves.” But without going out (280) of his house, he found enough (157) to exercise his patience in all its extent. Xantippe, his wife, put (51) it to the severest proofs, by her captious, passionate, violent (10) disposition. Never was woman of so furious and fantastical a spirit, and so bad a temper. (250) There was no kind of abuse

D d 3

or

* Seneca de Ira, l. iii. c. 15.

† Contra potens malum & apud nos gratiosum, dum conspiciamus, & nostri sumus, advocemus.

‡ Un soufflet.

or injurious treatment which (191) he did not experience from her. She was once so transported (328) with rage against him, that she tore off his cloak in the open street. Whereupon his friends told (46) him, that such treatment was insufferable, and that he ought to give her a severe drubbing for it. "Yes, a fine piece of sport indeed, says he, whilst she and (46) I were buffeting one another, you in your turns, I suppose, would animate us on to the combat; while one cried out, Well done, Socrates, another would say, Well hit, Xantippe." At another time, having vented all the reproaches (88) her fury could suggest, he (209) went out and sat before the door. His calm and unconcerned behaviour did (140) but irritate her so much the more †, and in the excess of her rage she ran up to her bed-chamber, and saluted him (41) with a plentiful shower from the window; at which he (142) only laughed, and said, "That so much thunder must needs produce rain †." Alcibiades, his friend, talking with him one day about his wife, told him, (321) he wondered how he could bear such an everlasting scold in the same house with him? he replied, "I have so accustomed myself (175) to expect it, that it now offends me no more than the noise of the carriages in the streets." The same disposition of mind was visible in other respects, and continued with him to his last moments. When he was told that the Athenians had condemned him to die, he replied, without the least emotion, "and Nature them." Apollodorus, one of his friends and disciples, having expressed his grief for his dying innocent, "What, replied he, with a smile, would you have had me die guilty?"

The sentence did not shake the constancy of Socrates in the least. § "I am going," says he, addressing himself to his judges with a noble tranquillity, "to

† Davantage. ‡ Diog. in Socrat. § Plato in Apolog. p. 39.

“to suffer death by your order, to which nature had condemned me from the first moment of my birth; but my accusers will suffer no less from infamy and injustice by the decrees of truth.” When the deadly potion (120) was brought him, he drank (51) it off with anamazing tranquillity and a serenity of aspect not to be (238) expressed or even conceived.—Till then his friends, with great violence to themselves, had refrained from tears, but after he had drank the poison, they were no longer their own masters, and wept abundantly. Apollodorus, who had been in tears for some time, began then to lament with such excessive grief, as pierced the hearts of all that were present. Socrates alone remained unmoved, and even reproved his friends, though with his usual mildness and good-nature, “What (235) are you doing,” said he to them, “I admire at you. Ah! what is become of your virtue? was it not for this I sent away the women, that they might not fall into these weaknesses; for I have always heard say that we ought to die peaceably and blessing the gods? Be at ease, I beg of you, and shew more (36) constancy and resolution.” Thus died Socrates, the wisest and the best man the heathen world could ever boast (91) of.

VESPASIAN, the (9) Roman emperor, being informed that his second son Domitian had abandoned himself to the most excessive debauchery, and assumed more (36) authority than became a younger prince of the blood, was incensed against him to a most violent degree. (85) This being observed by his eldest son Titus, the latter (209) interested himself, in the most pressing manner, in behalf of his brother; conjuring the Emperor, (159) not to yield too hastily to the accusations of a set of malicious informers. “To your own son, continued the prince, it is (140) but just that you should be (151) as gentle and indulgent

as the prudence of a father will permit. Our fleets and (67) legions are not such effectual bulwarks (157) to defend and support the imperial dignity, as a numerous and flourishing (10) issue in the imperial house. The number of our friends is diminished by time; they (44) often desert (43) us, (158) to follow the allurements of a more promising fortune; or, because we cannot, or do not chuse (159) to gratify their wishes: but, from our own offspring, we may expect the firmest assistance, and the most unshaken fidelity. In our prosperity, we may find many who are willing to share our joys; but our nearest relations alone will hardly condole with us in our adversities: nay, even between brethren themselves, that mutual concord and unanimity, upon which their happiness depends, will not (235) be lasting, if they have not the affection of their common parent, to support their union!"

Vespasian, though not entirely reconciled to Domitian, by this tender expostulation, (209) submitted to relax his severity; but he was charmed (41) with the affectionate benevolence of Titus, and admired the goodness of his heart. After the death of the emperor, the government devolved upon Titus: but the unnatural Domitian pretended to an equal share (125) in it; and, (158) to support his claim, raised great disturbances in the city, by giving out, that his father had left him partner in the empire, but that his will had been falsified by the injurious artifices of his rival. Titus, however, could not prevail upon himself either to punish or banish him, notwithstanding his ingratitude and villainy. On the contrary, he (209) respected and honoured (43) him as his colleague, and often conjured him in private (159) to lay aside his animosity against an affectionate brother, who was willing to allow (48) him as large a share in the administration, (151) as was consistent with his duty.

EUCHO,

EUCHO, one of the emperors of China, had three sons, and, like too many other parents, having a partial affection for the youngest, declared him his sole successor, to the exclusion of his brethren. Such an appointment was (150) the more extraordinary, as it was contrary to the established laws of the empire. The people, therefore, after the emperor's (18) decease, were of opinion, that, without any crime, they might reverse the will, and bestow the crown upon the eldest brother, who was the legal successor. This design, being universally approved, was instantly put in execution. But the new king, who (201) was a man of uncommon virtue, nobly rejected the offer; and, taking the crown, immediately placed (51) it on the head of his youngest brother; publicly declaring, that he thought himself unworthy (164) to wear it, because he had been excluded by his father, who could not now revive, and retract (83) what he had done. His brother, being struck (328) with love and admiration at such an extraordinary act of generosity, likewise refused the crown in his turn, and earnestly intreated him (130) not (159) to oppose the inclination of the people: he urged, that *he* alone was the true heir to the kingdom, and that their father had no right (162) to infringe the laws of the nation; that nothing could betray him into a refusal, (140) but an extravagant fondness, which cool reason (266) must condemn; and, lastly, that, (319) whether he consented or not, the people had an indisputable authority (156) to redress any breach in the constitution. These arguments, however, were ineffectual; and the other prince being equally resolute in refusing a crown, (90) to which, he asserted, he had no legal right, they both agreed to terminate the dispute (232) by retiring from court. Thus, after each of them had done his utmost (158) to persuade the other (169)

to

to become his absolute sovereign, they went to end their days in a happy solitude, and resigned a large and powerful empire to the second brother, who could not have formed the least prospect (127) of it, before he (44) actually received it.

IN the beginning of the 16th century, the Portuguese galleons set * sail from Lisbon to Goa, a rich and flourishing colony of that nation in the East-Indies. On board one of the vessels were no less than twelve hundred souls, consisting of mariners, passengers, priests, and friars. They met with good weather, and a fair wind, till they had doubled the Cape; but as they (235) were steering from thence, north-east towards the Indian ocean, (106) some gentlemen † on board, who had studied (42) geography and navigation, discovered, in their charts, a large ridge of rocks, which were (238) laid down in the very latitude in which they were then (235) sailing. This they (44) immediately communicated to the captain of the ship, who likewise informed the pilot of it, and desired (43) him (159) to ‡ lie by in the night, and slacken sail by day, till (216) they should be passed the danger. (261) It was the custom, it seems, of the Portuguese, to commit the navigation of the vessel entirely to the pilot, who was answerable || with his head for the safe conduct of the king's ships, and of (81) such as belonged to private traders; but he was under no manner of direction from the captain, though the latter was absolute commander in every other respect.

The pilot we are speaking (91) of, being one of those self-sufficient wretches, who look upon every hint that is suggested by another, in the way

(* Mirent à la voile.

† A bord.

‡ Mettre en travers.

|| Sur sa tête.

way of their own profession, as an insult offered to their capacity, was so far (231) from complying with the captain's request, that he actually crowded more sail than the vessel (147) had carried before. But they had not sailed many hours, before they fell into the very disaster (88) the gentlemen had suspected, and which, as it was then almost day-break, would have been easily prevented, if the pilot had condescended to lie by. The ship struck upon the ridge of rocks above mentioned. The reader may easily imagine, what a scene of horror this dreadful accident must have occasioned amongst twelve hundred persons, who had nothing before them (140) but the prospect of inevitable death. In this distress, the captain ordered the pinnace (325) to be hoisted out, into which having tossed a small quantity of biscuit, and a few boxes of marmalade, he jumped in first himself, followed by nineteen others, who with their drawn swords prevented any more (231) from coming after them, lest the vessel (137) should be over-set. In this condition they put off into the wide ocean, without a compass (158) to steer by, or any fresh water but what might happen to fall from the heavens, whose mercy alone could deliver them. After they had sailed four days, they scarcely knew whither, the captain, who for some time past had been very weak and sickly, expired before their eyes; which, if possible, still increased their misery; for, as they now fell into confusion for want of a commander, every one was desirous to govern, and none would obey. (85) This obliged them (177) to elect one of the company, whose orders they implicitly agreed (169) to follow. As their small stock of provisions was now so far exhausted, as not to be sufficient, at a very short allowance, to subsist them above three days longer; their new captain (210) proposed to the company, to draw lots, and to cast every fourth man over-board. The company (203) consisted
of

of nineteen persons. In this number were a friar and a carpenter, both of whom they agreed to exempt ; as the one might absolve, and comfort them in their last moments, and the other repair the pinnace, in case of a leak, or other accident. The same compliment they likewise (209) paid to the captain ; he being the odd man, and his life of much consequence. He, (44) indeed, refused their indulgence a considerable time ; but, at last, they obliged (43) him (177) to acquiesce ; so that (250) there were four (173) to die, out of the sixteen which remained. The three first, after (231) having confessed, and received absolution, submitted to their fate very patiently. But the fourth was a Portuguese gentleman, that had a younger brother in the boat, who, seeing (43) him about to be thrown overboard, embraced him, with great tenderness, and (209) besought him with tears in (71) his eyes, to permit (48) him (159) to die in his room ; urging, that he was a married man, and (197) had a wife and children at Goa, besides the care of three sisters, who absolutely (203) depended upon his generosity ; but that, as for himself, he was only a batchelor, and his life of very little importance. He, therefore, again, very earnestly (209) conjured him, to do so much justice to his family, as to suffer him to supply his place. The elder brother, who was astonished, and melted at such unexampled tenderness, replied, that, since the Providence of Heaven had appointed him to suffer (259) it would be very criminal and unjust, to permit any other (159) to die for him, and especially a brother, to whom he was so infinitely obliged. The younger, persisting in his generous purpose, would take no denial ; but, throwing himself upon his knees, held his brother so fast, that the company could not disengage them. Thus they disputed for a while, the elder brother enjoining him to be a father to his children, and recommending his wife
to

to his protection, and requesting him, as he would inherit his estate, (159) to take care of their common sisters. But all he could say could not make the younger desist. At last, however, the constancy of the elder brother yielded to the tenderness of the other. He, accordingly, acquiesced; and suffered the generous youth to supply his place: who being immediately thrown into the sea, and a good swimmer, he soon recovered the stern of the pinnace, and eagerly caught hold of the rudder with (71) his right hand. This being perceived by one of the sailors, he immediately struck off the hand with his sword; the gentleman then, dropping again into the water, seized on the rudder with his left hand, which received the same fate as the other. Thus deprived of both his hands, he, notwithstanding, made a shift to keep himself above water with his feet and two miserable stumps, the latter of which he held up alternately, while they (235) were yet streaming (328) with blood, to excite the compassion of the company. This producing the effect he wished for, they all cried out, *He is but one man, let us endeavour to save him.* He was, accordingly taken into the boat, and his bleeding wrists bound up, (151) as well as the circumstances and situation would permit. The next morning, a little after sun-rise, as if Heaven was determined to reward the courage and affection of this worthy young gentleman, they discovered land, which proved to be the mountains of Mozambic, in Africa, and not far from a Portugueze colony. Thither they all arrived in safety, and continued there, till the arrival of the next ship from Lisbon, which afterwards carried them to Goa. At that city, Mr. Linschoten (a writer of good sense and reputation, from whom we have borrowed the story) assures us, that he saw them (326) land, supped with the two brothers

thers that very night, beheld the younger with his stumps, and heard the account from their own mouths, as well as from the rest of the company.

WHEN Alexander the Great (209) came before the city of Gara, he found it provided with a strong garrison commanded by Betis, one of Darius's eunuchs. This governor, who was a brave man and very faithful to his sovereign, defended it with great vigour against Alexander. As this was the only inlet or pass into Egypt, it was absolutely necessary for him to conquer it, and therefore he was obliged (178) to besiege it. But although every art of war was employed, notwithstanding his soldiers fought with the utmost intrepidity, he was however forced to lie two months before it. Exasperated at its holding out so long, and his receiving two wounds, he was resolved (159) to treat the governor, the inhabitants, and soldiers, with a barbarity absolutely inexcusable; for he cut ten thousand men to pieces, and sold all the rest, with their wives and children, for slaves.

When Betis, who had been taken prisoner in the last assault was brought before him, Alexander, instead (321) of using him kindly, as his valour and (67) fidelity justly merited, this young monarch, who otherwise esteemed bravery even in an enemy, fired, on that occasion with an insolent joy, (209) spoke thus to him: "Betis, (64) thou shalt not die the death thou desirest, prepare therefore (169) to suffer all the torments which revenge can invent." Betis, looking upon the king, with not only a firm but a haughty air, (209) did not make the least reply to his menaces; upon which the king, more enraged than before at his disdainful silence; "Observe," said he, "I beseech (43) you, that dumb arrogance! Has (59) he bended the knee? Has he spoken (140) but so much as one
submissive

submissive word? But I will conquer this obstinate silence, and will force groans from him, if I can draw nothing else." At last Alexander's anger rose to fury, his conduct now beginning (184) to change with his fortune: upon which he ordered a hole (325) to be made through his heels, when a rope being put through them, and that tied to a chariot, he ordered his soldiers to drag Betis round the city till he died. He boasted (321) his having imitated upon this occasion Achilles, from whom he was descended, who, as Homer relates, caused the dead body of Hector to be dragged in the same manner round the walls of Troy; as if a man ought to pride himself for having imitated so ill an example. Both were very barbarous; but Alexander was much more so in causing Betis to be dragged alive, and for no other reason than because he had served his sovereign with bravery and fidelity; by defending a city with which he had entrusted him; a fidelity that ought to have been (238) admired, and even rewarded, by an enemy, rather than punished in so cruel a manner. Such are the monsters whom Sycophants style, Great!

WHEN the Great Fabricius (201) was at the head of the Roman army against Pyrrhus, king of Epire, an unknown person came to his tent, with a letter from the king's Physician. The traitor offered (159) to poison his sovereign, if the Romans would promise (48) him a reward which was adequate to such an important service. Fabricius, who (201) preserved the most rigorous integrity among the horrors of war, and thought himself obliged to behave with justice and honour even towards an enemy, was shocked at the proposal; and, as he had before avoided the dishonour (231) of being conquered by the king's gold, he now considered it as equally infamous to con-

quer the king by poison. After a short conference, therefore, with his colleague Æmilius, he wrote a letter to Pyrrhus, with his own hand, to caution him against the treachery of his physician, whose letter (209) he inclosed for that purpose. He expressed himself in the following manner :

“ Sir,

“ You seem to have equally mistaken the character both of your friends and enemies ; for, (as you will be sufficiently convinced by the perusal of the inclosed) you have commenced open war against a people of the strictest virtue and honour, and reposed the most dangerous confidence in a wretch who is not worthy (164) to live. The information (88) we thus send (48) you results entirely from a regard to our own reputation. We were unwilling that the manner of your death should give the world any room (156) to reproach us ; or to imagine that we have so mean an opinion of our own bravery, as to have recourse to the treachery of your servants.”

When Pyrrhus had read the letter, he ordered the Physician (325) to be put to death ; and, afterwards, as a proper acknowledgment to the generosity of Fabricius, sent back all the Romans (88) he had taken prisoners, without any ransom.

THE same Pyrrhus, some years after, having defeated the army of Antigonus, immediately (209) seized upon his kingdom. But both armies meeting again at Argos, the inhabitants sent deputies to each, humbly requesting that neither of them would march their troops into the city. Their request was granted : but, contrary to his promise, Pyrrhus rushed into the town, the same night, with all his forces. The affrighted citizens immediately sent to Antigonus for assistance ; and both parties engaging each other with

with the utmost fury, Pyrrhus was found the next morning, among the (7) slain. Alcyoneus, the son of Antigonus, ordering the head to be cut off, seized (51) it by the hair, and riding full † speed with it to his father, (209) threw it down at his feet ; but Antigonus, who was a man of spirit and understanding, was so far from (231) commending the action, that he thrust his son away from him, and even struck him with his truncheon :—"Contemptible wretch," said he, "how could you imagine (321) such a sight would be agreeable to me, whose grandfather was slain in battle, and (89) whose father died a captive ? Then, taking the robe off his shoulders, he immediately covered the head (127) with it, and, letting fall a flood of tears, gave orders that the body should be carefully sought for, and interred with all the funeral honours done to a hero and a king. Soon after, Alcyoneus having discovered Helenus, the son of Pyrrhus, in a thread-bare coat, which he had put on (158) to conceal himself, he accosted (43) him very kindly, and then (209) presented him to his father, with all the respect that was due to his rank,—“Well, my son,” said Antigonus, “this is much better than you did before : but you have still offended me (232) by suffering a person of his quality (159) to approach me in that pitiful garb, which is not a disgrace to him who wears it, but to yourself, who (159) neglected to provide him with a better !” Having, afterwards, consoled Helenus for the loss of his father, and entertained (43) him in the most kind and honourable manner, he (209) set him at liberty, and sent him home to his kingdom.

E e 3

An

† Au grand galop.

An account of the cruel sacrifice of the Canaanites, Phœnicians and other nations.

(118) **O**NE would think it scarce possible, that so unnatural a custom, as that of human sacrifices, should have existed in the world : but it is very certain, that it did not only exist, but almost universally prevail. The Egyptians of old brought no victims to their temples, nor shed any blood at their altars : But human victims and the blood of men (266) must be here excepted ; which at one period they most certainly (198) offered to their gods. The Cretans had the same custom ; and adhered (125) to it a much longer time. The nations of Arabia did the same. The people of Dumah in particular sacrificed every year a child ; and buried it underneath an altar, which they made use (91) of instead of an idol : For they did not admit of images. The Persians buried people alive. Amestris, the wife of Xerxes, (209) entombed twelve persons quick under ground for the good of her soul. It would be endless to enumerate every city or every province, where these cruel practices obtained. The Cyprians, the Rhodians, the Phœceans, the Ionians, those of Chios, Lesbos, Tenedos, all had human sacrifices. The natives of the Tauric Chersonesus (198) offered up to Diana every stranger whom chance threw upon their coast. Hence arose that just expostulation in Euripides, upon the inconsistency of the proceeding ; wherein much (39) good reasoning is implied. Iphigenia wonders, as the goddess (203) delighted in the blood of men, that every villain and murderer should be privileged to escape ; nay, be driven from the threshold of the temple : whereas, if an (10) honest and virtuous man chanced to stray thither, he only was seized upon, and put to death. The Pelasgi in a time of scarcity (198) vowed the tenth of all that should be born to them, for a sacrifice in order

order to procure plenty. Aristomenes the Messenian slew three hundred noble Lacedemonians, among whom was Theopompus the king of Sparta, at the altar of Jupiter at Ithome. Without doubt the Lacedemonians did not fail to make ample returns : for they were a severe and revengeful people, and offered the like victims to Mars. Their festival of the Diamastigosis is well known ; when the Spartan boys were whipped in the sight of their parents with such severity before the altar of Diana Orthia, that they often expired under the torture. Pylarchus affirms, as he is quoted by Porphyry, that of old every Grecian state made it a rule, before they marched towards the enemy, to solicit a blessing on their undertakings by human victims.

The Romans were accustomed to the like sacrifices. They both devoted themselves to the infernal gods, and constrained others (177) to submit to the same horrid doom. Hence we read in Titius Livius, that in the consulate of Æmilius Paulus and Terentius Varro, two Gauls, a man and a woman, and two in like manner of Greece, (209) were buried alive at Rome in the Ox-Market, where was a place under ground, walled round (185) to receive them ; which had before been made use (91) of for such cruel purposes. He says (261) it was a sacrifice not properly Roman ; that is, not originally of Roman institution ; yet it was frequently practised (125) there, and by public authority. Plutarch makes mention of a like instance a few years before, in the consulship of Flaminius and Furius. (250) There is reason to think, that all the principal captives, who graced the triumphs of the Romans, were at the close of that cruel pageantry put to death at the altar of Jupiter Capitolinus. Caius Marius offered up his own daughter for a victim to the Dii Avernici, to procure success in a battle against the Cimbri ; as we are informed

informed by Dorotheus, quoted by Clemens. It is likewise attested by Plutarch, who says that her name was Calpurnia. Marius was a man of a four and bloody disposition; and had probably heard of such sacrifices being offered in the enemies camp, among whom they were very common: or he might have beheld them exhibited at a distance: and therefore murdered (83) what was nearest, and should have been dearest, to him; (185) to counteract their fearful spells, and outdo (43) them in their wicked machinery. Cicero making mention of this custom being common in Gaul, adds, that it prevailed among that people, even at the time when he (235) was speaking: from whence we may be led to infer, that it was then discontinued among the Romans. And we are told by Pliny, that it had then, and not very long, been discouraged. For there was a law enacted, when Lentulus and Crassus were consuls, so late as the 657th year of Rome, that there (250) should be no more human sacrifices: for till that time those horrid rites had been (238) celebrated in broad day without any mask, or controul: which, had we not the best evidence for the fact, would appear scarce credible. And however discontinued they may have been for a time, we find, that they were again renewed; though they became not so public, nor so general. For not very long after (85) this, (119) it is reported of Augustus Cæsar, when Perusia surrendered in the time of the second Triumvirate, that besides multitudes executed in a military manner, he (209) offered up upon the Ides of March three hundred chosen persons, both of the Equestrian and Senatorian order, at an altar dedicated to the manes of his uncle Julius. Even at Rome itself this custom was revived: and Porphyry assures us, that in his time a man (120) was every year sacrificed at the shrine of Jupiter Latiaris. Heliogabalus offered the like victims to the Syrian deity, which he introduced among the Romans. (120) The same is said of Aurelian.

The

The Gauls and the Germans were so devoted to this shocking custom, that no business of any moment was transacted among them, without being prefaced with the blood of men. They were (238) offered up to various gods.

The altars of these gods were far removed from the common resort of men : being generally situated in the depth of woods ; that the gloom might add to the horror of the operation, and give a reverence to the place and proceeding. The persons devoted were (238) led thither by the Druids, who (203) presided at the solemnity, and performed the cruel offices of the sacrifice. Tacitus takes notice of the cruelty of the Hermunduri, in a war with the Catti, wherein they had greatly the advantage : at the close of which they made one general sacrifice of all that was taken in battle. The poor remains of the legions under Varus suffered in some degree the same fate. (250) There were many places destined for this purpose all over Gaul and Germany ; but especially in the mighty woods of Arduenna, and the great Hercinian forest ; a wild, that (200) extended above thirty days journey in length. The places set apart for this solemnity were held in the utmost reverence ; and only approached at particular seasons. Lucan mentions a grove of this sort near Massilia, which even the Roman soldiers were afraid (159) to violate, though commanded by Cæsar. It was one of those set apart for the sacrifices of the country.

Claudian compliments Stilico, that, among other advantages accruing to the Roman armies through his conduct, they could now venture into the awful forest of Hercinia ; and follow the chase in those so much dreaded woods, and otherwise make use of them.

These practices prevailed among all the people of the north, of whatever denomination. The Massagetæ, the Scythians, the Getes, the Sarmatians, all the

the various nations upon the Baltick, particularly the Suevi and Scandinavians, held it as a fixed principle, that their happiness and security could not be obtained, but at the expence of the lives of others. Their chief gods were Thor, and Woden; whom they thought, (321) they could never sufficiently glut (328) with blood. They had many very celebrated places of worship; especially in the island of Rugen, near the mouth of the Oder; and in Zeeland: some too very famous among the Semnones, and Naharvalli. But the most revered of all, and the most frequented, was at Upsal; where there was every year a grand celebrity, which (200) continued for nine days. During this term they sacrificed animals of all sorts: but the most acceptable victims, and the most numerous were men. Of these sacrifices none were esteemed so auspicious, and salutary, as a sacrifice of the prince of the country. When the lot fell for the king to die, it was received with universal acclamations, and every expression of joy; as it once happened in the time of a famine, when they cast lots, and it fell to king Domalder to be the people's victim: and he was accordingly put to death. Olaus Tretelger, another prince, (210) was burnt alive to Woden. They did not spare their own children: Harald the son of Gunild, the first of that name, slew two of his children (185) to obtain a storm of wind. "He did not let," says Verstegan, to sacrifice two of his sons unto his idols, (158) to the end he might obtain (127) of them such a tempest at sea, as should break and disperse the shipping of Harald king of Denmark." Saxo Grammaticus mentions a like fact. He calls the king Haquin; and speaks of the persons put to death, as two very hopeful young princes: Another king slew nine sons, in order to prolong his own life; in hopes, I suppose, that, what they were abridged of would in great measure be added to himself. Such instances, however, occur not often:

but

but the common victims were without end. Adam Bremensis, speaking of the awful grove at Upsal, where these horrid rites were (238) celebrated, says, that there was not a single tree, but what was revered, as if it were gifted with some portion of divinity: and all (85) this, because they were stained (328) with gore, and foul with human putrefaction.

The manner, in which the victims were slaughtered, was diverse in different places. Some of the Gaulish nations (200) chined them with the stroke of an axe. The Celtæ placed the man, who was (322) to be offered for a sacrifice, upon a block, or an altar, with his breast upwards; and with a sword struck him forcibly across the *sternum*: then tumbling him to the ground, from his agonies and convulsions, as well (151) as from the effusion of blood, they formed a judgment of future events. The Cimbri ripped open the bowels; and from them they pretended to divine. In Norway they beat mens brains out with an ox-yoke. The same operation was performed in Iceland, (232) by dashing them against an altar of stone. In many places they transfixed (43) them with arrows. After they were dead, they suspended them upon the trees, and left them to putrify. One of the writers, above quoted, mentions, that in his time, seventy carcases of this sort (120) were found in a wood of the Suevi. Dithmar of Mersburgh, an author of nearly the same age, speaks of a place called Ledur in Zeeland, where there were every year ninety and nine persons sacrificed to the god Swantowite. During these bloody festivals a general joy (200) prevailed; and banquets were most royally served. (118) They fed; they caroused; and gave a loose to indulgence, which at other times was not permitted. They imagined, that there was something mysterious in the number nine; for which reason these feasts were in some places celebrated every ninth year; in others every ninth month; and continued for nine days. When all was ended, (118) they washed

(200) washed the image of the deity in a pool ; on account, I suppose, of its being stained with blood ; and then dismissed the assembly. Their servants were numerous, who attended during the term of their feasting, and partook of the banquet. At the close of all, they were smothered in the same pool, or otherwise made away with. On which Tacitus remarks, how great an awe this circumstance (266) must necessarily infuse into those who were not admitted to these mysteries.

These accounts are handed down from a variety of authors in different ages : many of whom were natives of the countries, which they describe ; and to which they seem strongly attached. They would not therefore have brought so foul an imputation on the part of the world, in favour of which they (235) were each writing ; nor could there be that concurrence of testimony, were not the history in general true.

The like custom (200) prevailed to a great degree at Mexico, and even under the mild government of the Peruvians ; and in most parts of America. In Africa it is still kept up ; where, in the inland parts they sacrifice some of the captives taken in war to their Fetiches, in order to secure their favour. Snelgrave was in the king of Dahome's camp, after his inroad into the countries of Ardra and Whidaw ; and says, that he was a witness to the cruelty of this prince, whom (210) he saw sacrifice multitudes to the deity of his nation.

The sacrifices, of which I have been (235) treating, if we except some few instances, (203) consisted of persons doomed by the chance of war, or assigned by lot (157) to be offered. But among the nations of Canaan, (89) of whom I first spoke, the victims were peculiarly chosen. Their own children, and whatever was nearest and dearest to them, were deemed the most worthy (234) offering to their god. The Carthaginians, who were a colony from Tyre, (209) carried with

with them the religion of their mother country, and instituted the same worship in the parts where they settled. It (203) consisted in the adoration of several deities, but particularly of Kronus ; to whom they offered human sacrifices ; and especially the blood of children. If the parents were not at hand (158) to make an immediate offer, the magistrates did not fail to make choice of (83) what was most fair and promising ; that the god might not be defrauded of his dues. Upon a check being received in Sicily, and some other alarming circumstances happening, Hamilcar without any hesitation (209) laid hold of a boy, and offered him on the spot to Kronus ; and at the same time drowned a number of priests, (158) to appease the deity of the sea. The Carthaginians another time, upon a great defeat of their army by Agathocles, imputed their miscarriages to the anger of this god, whose services (120) had been neglected. Touched with this, and seeing the enemy at their gates, they seized at once two hundred children of the prime nobility, and offered (43) them in public for a sacrifice. Three hundred more being persons who were some how obnoxious, (209) yielded themselves voluntarily, and were put to death with the others. The neglect, of which they accused themselves, consisted (176) in sacrificing children, purchased of parents among the poorer sort, who (203) reared them for that purpose ; and not selecting the most promising, and the most honourable, as had been the custom of old. In short, (252) there were particular children brought up for the altar, as sheep are fattened for the shambles ; and they (198) were bought and butchered in the same manner. But this indiscriminate way (231) of proceeding was thought to have given offence. (259) It is remarkable, that the Egyptians looked out for the most specious and handsome person to be sacrificed. The Aldanians pitched upon the best man of the community,

F f

munity, and (198) made him pay for the wickedness of the rest. The Carthaginians chose what they thought the most excellent, and at the same time the most dear to them ; which made the lot fall heavy upon their children.

Kronus, (90) to whom these sacrifices (120) were exhibited, was an oriental deity, the god of light and fire ; and therefore always worshipped with some reference to that element. The Carthaginians, as I have observed, first introduced (43) him into Africa. He was the same as the Orus of the Egyptians, and the Alorus of the eastern nations. That the name given him originally by the Greeks was Koronus, is manifest from a place in Crete, which was sacred (48) to him, and is mentioned by the name Coronis. It is said, that both the chief city, and the adjacent country, were thus denominated ; and that these sacrifices were (125) there offered, which we know were peculiar to Kronus. If this place which was consecrated to (48) him (as is apparent by these offerings), was called Koronus ; it is plain, that his name must have been rendered by the Greeks Koronus.

The Greeks, we find, called the deity, (90) to whom these offerings were made, Agraalos ; and feigned that she was a woman, and the daughter of Cecrops. It was in reality the god of light ; the Orus and Alorus, (89) of whom I have said so much, who was always worshipped with fire. This deity was the Moloch of the Tyrians and Canaanites, and the Melech of the east ; that is, the great and principal god, the god of light, of whom fire was esteemed a symbol ; and at whose shrine, instead of viler victims, they (198) offered the blood of men.

Such was the Kronus of the Greeks, and the Moloch of the Phenicians ; and nothing can appear more shocking, than the sacrifices of the Tyrians, and Carthaginians, which they performed to this idol. In all emergencies

emergencies of state, and times of general calamity, they devoted (83) what was most necessary and valuable to them, for an offering to the gods, and particularly to Moloch. But besides these undetermined times of bloodshed, they (198) had particular and prescribed seasons every year, when children (120) were chosen out of the most noble and reputable families, as I have before mentioned. If a person had an only child, it was the more liable to be put to death, as being esteemed more acceptable to the deity, and more efficacious of the general good. Those (78) who were sacrificed to Kronus were thrown into the arms of a molten idol, which stood in the midst of a large fire, and was red (328) with heat. The arms of it were stretched out, with the hands turned upwards, as it were (158) to receive them; yet sloping downwards, so that they dropt from thence into a glowing furnace below. To other gods they were otherwise slaughtered; and, as it is implied, by the very hands of their parents. What can be more horrid to the imagination, than to suppose a father leading the dearest of all his sons to such an infernal shrine? or a mother, the most engaging and affectionate of her daughters, just rising to maturity, to be slaughtered at the altar of Astartoth or Baal? Such was their blind zeal, that (85) this was continually practised; and so much of natural affection still left unextinguished, as to render the scene ten times more shocking, from the tenderness which they seemed to express. They (207) embraced their children with great fondness; and encouraged them in the gentlest terms, that they might not be appaled at the sight of the hellish process: begging of them (159) to submit with chearfulness to this fearful operation. If there was any appearance of a tear rising, or a cry unawares escaping; the mother smothered it with her kisses: that there might not be any show of backwardness, or constraint; but the whole be a

free-will-offering. These cruel endearments over, they stabbed (43) them to the heart, or otherwise opened the sluices of life ; and with the blood warm, as it ran, (198) besmeared the altar, and the grim visage of the idol. These were the customs, which the Israelites learned of the people of Canaan ; and for which they are (238) upbraided by the Psalmist. " They did not destroy the nations, concerning whom the Lord commanded them ; but were mingled among the heathen, and learned their works. Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters unto devils, and shed innocent blood, even the blood of their sons and of their daughters, whom they sacrificed unto the idols of Canaan : and the land was polluted (328) with blood."

These cruel rites, practised in so many nations, made Plutarch debate with himself, " whether it would not have been better for the Galatæ, or for the Scythians, to have had no tradition or conception of any superior beings, than to have formed to themselves notions of gods, who (203) delighted in the blood of men ; of gods, who esteemed human victims the most acceptable and perfect sacrifice ? Would it not," says he, " have been more eligible for the Carthaginians to have had the atheist Critias or Diagoras, their law-giver at the commencement of their polity, and to have been taught, that (250) there was neither god, nor dæmon, than to have sacrificed, in the manner they were wont, to the god which they adored ? Wherein they acted, not as the person did, whom Empedocles describes in some poetry, where he exposes this unnatural custom. The fire there with many idle vows offers up unwittingly his son for a sacrifice ; but the youth was so changed in feature and figure, that his father did not know him. These people used, knowingly and wilfully, to go through this bloody work, and slaughter their own offspring. Even they
who

who were childless, would not be exempted from this cursed tribute ; but [198] purchased children at a price of poorer sort, and put them to death with [151] as little remorse as one would kill a lamb, or a chicken. The mother, who [203] sacrificed her child, stood by without any seeming sense of [83] what she was [235] losing, and without uttering a groan. If a sigh did by chance escape, she lost all the honour which she proposed to herself in the offering ; and the child was notwithstanding slain. All the time of this celebrity, while the children were murdering, there was a noise of clarions and tabers sounding before the idol ; that the cries and shrieks of the victims might not be heard. Tell me now," says Plutarch, " if the monsters of old, the Typhons, and the giants were [322] to expel the gods, and to rule the world in their stead ; could they require a service more horrid, than these infernal rites and sacrifices ?"

WHEN Agesilaus, king of Sparta, was presented by the Thasians with a large quantity of the most delicate eatables, and costly liquors, he ordered the whole to be shared among the slaves, who performed the drudgery of the camp. The Thasians, with the utmost surprize, enquiring the motive of his conduct, he nobly replied, " That it was beneath the character of men, who valued themselves for their probity and courage, to regale themselves [328] with niceties, which could serve no other purpose [140] but to provoke and corrupt the appetite. Such dainty trifles, continued he, can be relished by slaves, who aspire to no greater pleasure, than that [231] of eating and drinking ; and I have taken the liberty to bestow them accordingly." For this reason, he would accept of nothing for the use of himself, and his brave countrymen, but some sacks of flour, which accompanied the present above-mentioned.

Lyfander, another of the Spartan chiefs, having the command of an expedition in Ionia, some of the natives, who [201] were his friends, brought [48] him an ox, and a large cake. The general, fixing his eyes upon the cake, enquired very bluntly [83] what it was ? They informed him, it was a kind of loaf, but much superior to the common ones ; for it was enriched, they assured him, [41] with the finest honey, and the most delicious ingredients that could be procured. " Say you so ?" replied the Spartan, " then let it be instantly taken away, and distributed among my slaves ; for such effeminate dainties are beneath the notice of a free-born citizen." But he politely thanked them for the ox ; and ordering it to be killed and dressed after the Spartan fashion, * [46] he and his companions made a hearty meal [127] of it in the evening.

CYRUS the Great, according to the manners of the Persians, [199] was from his infancy accustomed to sobriety and temperance ; of which he was himself a most illustrious example, thro' the whole course of his life. When he was [329] twelve years old, his mother Mandane took him with her into Media, to his grandfather Astyages ; who, from the many things [88] he had heard in his favour, had a great desire to see him. In this court, young Cyrus found very different manners from those of his own country. Pride, luxury, and magnificence, [200] reigned here universally : but this general corruption had no effect upon the prince : who, without [331] criticising or condemning what he saw, was contented [164] to live as he had been brought up, and adhered very patiently to the principles [88] he had [239] imbibed from his childhood. He charmed his grandfather with his sprightliness

* A la mode de Sparte.

sprightliness and wit ; and gained the affection of the whole court, by his noble and engaging behaviour. Aftyages, to render the visit of his grandson more agreeable to him, provided a sumptuous entertainment, in which there was the greatest plenty and profusion of every thing that was nice and delicate. All this variety of exquisite cheer Cyrus beheld with indifference ; and even ventured to remark upon it, with a kind of pleasantry, which did honour to his understanding, and gave offence to no one. “ Sir, said he, to his grandfather, if you taste all the dainties now before you, and reach out your hand to every dish upon the table, you must take more trouble for one supper, than would be sufficient for a hundred !” “ What, replied Aftyages ; and is not [85] this, think you, a much better entertainment, than any you have been used [91] to in Persia ?” “ No, indeed, answered the prince, with a smile ; for, in Persia, we have a much readier and shorter method to satisfy our hunger ; a piece of meat, and slice of bread, do the business at once : but here, after [231] travelling from this dish to that, and performing a tedious hunt from one end of the table to the other, you scarcely at last reach the wished-for point, which we Persians arrive [91] at with the least trouble in the world.”

SACAS, the cup-bearer of the above-mentioned Aftyages, had likewise the office of [231] introducing such to the king as were permitted to have an audience : but not granting this liberty to Cyrus as often as he desired it, he had the misfortune to displease the prince ; who therefore, as might be expected from a child, took every opportunity [156] to mortify him. This being observed by Aftyages, he endeavoured to remove the prince's dislike, by commending Sacas for the remarkable neatness and dexterity with which he performed

performed his office. "Is that all, Sir?" replied Cyrus; "if such a trifling accomplishment is sufficient to merit your favour, you shall soon see how well I am able to deserve it; for, with your permission, I will immediately take upon me to serve you much better than he." Cyrus accordingly equipped himself like a cup-bearer; and advancing carefully, with a serious countenance, a napkin upon his arm, and holding the cup very neatly with three of his fingers, presented it to the king with such a respectful gravity, that neither Astyages, nor his mother Mandane, could forbear [161] smiling. Concluding from hence, that he had performed his part to their satisfaction, he instantly flung himself about his grandfather's neck; and caressing him very fondly,—“O Sacas! cried he, in an extasy of joy, poor unfortunate Sacas! you are certainly undone; and I shall now have the honour [156] to serve my grandfather in your stead.” “Indeed, said Astyages (who was much pleased at the fondness of his grandson,) [266] I must do you justice to acknowledge that you have performed your part to admiration; nobody can serve with a better grace: but you forgot one material ceremony, which is, that [231] of tasting:” for the cup-bearer, it seems, always [198] poured some of the liquor into his left hand, and tasted it, before he presented [31] it to the king. “No, Sir, replied Cyrus; I did not omit that part through forgetfulness; but because I suspected [321] there was poison in the liquor.” “Poison, child! how could you think so?” “Yes, Sir, said he, I was afraid of poison; for, not long [254] ago, at an entertainment [88] you gave to your nobles, on your last birth-day, I plainly saw, that your faithful Sacas had mixed some poison in the liquor. It was impossible for me to think otherwise; for after you had drank of it pretty freely, I took notice, that you were surprisngly disordered, both in body and mind. Those very things, which you forbid

[48] us children to do, you did yourselves. You all spoke together ; nor did any one attend to what was said, even by the person who [203] sat next to him. You sung the most nonsensical songs I ever [239] heard, and yet you all swore they were the best in the universe. After that when any of you rose up [158] to entertain the company with a dance, you were so far [231] from being able to keep time, that you could scarcely keep on your feet. In short, you yourself seemed to forget that you were a king, and they that they were subjects." " Very true, child, said Astyages, but have you never observed the same disorder in your father ?" " Never in my life, replied Cyrus." " What then ? how is it with him, when he drinks ?" " Why, when he has drank what he chuses, his thirst is [238] quenched ; and that is all."

WHEN Charles, Duke of Burgundy, surnamed *the Bold*, [203] reigned over spacious dominions, now swallowed up by the power of France, he heaped many favours and honours upon Claudius Rhynsault, a German who had served [43] him in his wars, against the insults of his neighbours. A great part of Zealand was, at that time, in subjection to that kingdom. The prince himself was a person of singular humanity and justice. Rhynsault, with no other real quality than courage, had dissimulation [36] enough [186] to pass upon his generous and unsuspecting master for a person of blunt honesty and fidelity, without any vice that could bias him from the execution of justice. His Highness, prepossessed to his advantage, upon the decease of the governor of his chief town of Zealand, gave Rhynsault that command. He was not long seated in that government, before he cast his eyes upon Sapphira, a woman of exquisite beauty, the wife of Paul Danvelt, a wealthy merchant of the city under his protection and [67] government.

government. Rhynsault [199] was a man of a warm constitution, and violent inclination to women, and not unskilled in the soft arts which win their favour. He knew what it was to enjoy the satisfactions which are [238] reaped from the possession of beauty; but was an utter stranger to the decencies, honours, and delicacies that attend the passion towards them in elegant minds. However, he had seen so much of the world, that he had a great share of the language which usually prevails upon the weaker part of that sex, and he could with his tongue utter a passion [41] with which his heart was wholly untouched. Rhynsault being resolved to accomplish his will on the wife of Danvelt, left no art untried [158] to get into a familiarity at her house: but she knew his character and disposition too well, not to shun all occasions that might ensnare her into his conversation. The governor, despairing of success by ordinary means, apprehended and imprisoned her husband, under pretence of an information that he was guilty of a correspondence with the enemies of the duke, to betray the town into their possession. This design had the desired effect; and the wife of the unfortunate Danvelt, the day before [78] that which was appointed for his execution, presented herself in the hall of the governor's house, and, as he passed through the apartment, threw herself at his feet, and, holding his knees, beseeched his mercy. Rhynsault beheld her with a dissembled satisfaction, and assuming an air of thought and authority, he bid [48] her arise, and told her she [266] must follow him to his closet; and asking her whether she knew the hand of the letter [88] he pulled out of his pocket, went from her, leaving this admonition aloud: "If you will save your husband, you must give me an account of all you know, without prevarication; for every body is satisfied [321] he was too fond of you [186] to be able to hide from you the names of the rest of the conspirators,

conspirators, or any other particulars whatsoever." He went to his closet, and soon after the lady was sent for to an audience. The servant knew his distance, when matters of state were [322] to be debated; and the governor, laying aside the air in which he appeared in public, [172] began to be the suppliant, to rally an affliction which it was in her power easily to remove, and relieve an innocent man from his imprisonment. She easily perceived his intention, and bathed in tears, began to deprecate so wicked a design. He signified to her that he was unhappy till he had possessed her, and nothing less should be the price of her husband's life; and she must, before the [213] following noon, pronounce the death or enlargement of Danvelt. After this notification, when he saw Sapphira again enough distracted to make the subject of their discourse to common eyes appear different from what it was, he called his servant [158] to conduct her to the gate. Loaded with insupportable affliction, she [44] immediately repairs to her husband; and having signified to his jailors, that she had a proposal to make to her husband from the governor, she was left alone with him, revealed to him all that had passed, and represented the endless conflict she was in between love to his person, and fidelity to his bed. The man was bridled by shame from speaking what his fear prompted upon so near an approach of death; but let fall words that signified to her [321] he should not think her polluted, since he knew her will had no part in the action. She parted from him with this oblique permission to save a life he had not resolution enough to resign for the safety of his honour.

The next morning the unhappy Sapphira attended the governor, and, being led into a remote apartment, submitted to his desires. Rhynsault bid her return, and take her husband out of prison, "but, continued he, my fair one [266] must not be offended, that I
have

have taken care he shall not be an interruption to our future assignations." These last words foreboded what she found when she came to the jail,—“her husband executed by the order of Rhynsfault!”

She betook herself to her abode, and, after having in solitude paid her devotions to Him who is the avenger of innocence, she repaired privately to court. Her person, and a certain grandeur of sorrow, negligent of forms, gained her a passage into the presence of the duke, her sovereign, to whom she delivered a paper reciting her story. He read it with all the emotions that indignation and pity could raise in a prince jealous of his honour in the behaviour of his officers, and prosperity of his subjects.

Upon an appointed day, Rhynsfault was sent for to court, and, in the presence of a few of the council, confronted by Sapphira. The prince asking, “Do you know that lady? Rhynsfault, as soon as he could recover his surprize, told the duke [321] he would marry her, if his highness would please to accept that reparation. The duke seemed contented with this answer, and stood by during the immediate solemnization of the ceremony. At the conclusion of it, he told Rhynsfault,—“Thus far you have done as constrained by my authority; I shall not be satisfied of your kind usage to her, unless you sign a gift of your whole estate to her after your decease.” To the performance of this also the duke was a witness. When these two acts were executed, the duke turned to the lady, and told her, “It now remains for me to put [43] you in quiet possession of what your husband has so bountifully bestowed on you;” and ordered the immediate execution of Rhynsfault.

F I N I S

